# Table of Contents

## Introduction
- About This Manual ........................................... 5
- Symbols Glossary ............................................. 5
- Replacement Parts Recommendation .......................... 7
- Mobile Communications Equipment .......................... 7
- Data Recording ................................................ 8

## At a Glance
- At a Glance ..................................................... 9

## Child Safety
- Installing Child Seats ....................................... 15
- Child Seat Positioning ..................................... 18
- Child Safety Locks ........................................... 21

## Seat Belts
- Fastening the Seat Belts....................................... 22
- Seat Belt Height Adjustment ............................... 22
- Seat Belt Minder ............................................. 23

## Supplementary Restraints System
- Principle of Operation ..................................... 24
- Driver Airbag ............................................... 24
- Passenger Airbag .......................................... 24
- Side Airbags ............................................... 25
- Knee Airbag ................................................. 26
- Side Curtain Airbags ...................................... 26

## Keys and Remote Controls
- General Information on Radio Frequencies .................. 27
- Remote Control ............................................... 27
- Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control ...................... 30

## MyKey
- Principle of Operation ...................................... 31

## Locks
- Locking and Unlocking ..................................... 34
- Manual Liftgate ............................................. 36
- Keyless Entry ............................................... 36

## Security
- Passive Anti-Theft System ................................ 39
- Anti-Theft Alarm ............................................ 39

## Steering Wheel
- Adjusting the Steering Wheel ................................ 42
- Audio Control ............................................... 42
- Voice Control ............................................... 43
- Cruise Control ............................................... 43

## Wipers and Washers
- Windscreen Wipers ......................................... 44
- Autowipers ................................................... 44
- Windscreen Washers ....................................... 45
- Rear Window Wiper and Washers ........................... 45

## Lighting
- General Information ......................................... 47
- Lighting Control ............................................. 47
- Autolamps .................................................... 48
- Instrument Lighting Dimmer ................................. 48
- Headlamp Exit Delay ....................................... 48
- Daytime Running Lamps ................................... 49
- Front Fog Lamps ............................................ 49
- Rear Fog Lamps ............................................ 49
- Headlamp Levelling ........................................ 49
- Direction Indicators ....................................... 50
- Interior Lamps .............................................. 50
# Table of Contents

## Windows and Mirrors
- Power Windows .............................................. 52
- Exterior Mirrors ................................................ 53
- Interior Mirror ................................................... 54
- Global Opening and Closing .............................. 55

## Instrument Cluster
- Gauges .................................................................. 57
- Warning Lamps and Indicators ......................... 58
- Audible Warnings and Indicators ..................... 61

## Information Displays
- General Information ...................................... 62
- Clock ................................................................ 65
- Trip Computer ................................................... 65
- Personalised Settings .................................. 66
- Information Messages ...................................... 66

## Climate Control
- Principle of Operation................................... 77
- Air Vents ............................................................. 77
- Manual Climate Control ......................... 78
- Automatic Climate Control ............................. 79
- Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate ....... 80
- Heated Windows and Mirrors ..................... 83

## Seats
- Sitting in the Correct Position ................... 84
- Head Restraints ................................................. 84
- Manual Seats - 3-Door ................................... 85
- Manual Seats - 5-Door ................................... 87
- Rear Seats ....................................................... 89
- Heated Seats ..................................................... 89

## Auxiliary Power Points
- Auxiliary Power Points .................................. 91
- Cigar Lighter ..................................................... 91

## Storage Compartments
- Cup Holders ....................................................... 92
- Bottle Holder ..................................................... 92

## Starting and Stopping the Engine
- General Information ...................................... 93
- Ignition Switch .................................................... 93
- Keyless Starting ................................................. 93
- Steering Wheel Lock ........................................ 95
- Starting a Petrol Engine ................................. 95
- Starting a Diesel Engine ................................. 96
- Diesel Particulate Filter ...................................... 97
- Switching Off the Engine .............................. 98

## Unique Driving Characteristics
- Start-Stop ........................................................... 99

## Fuel and Refuelling
- Safety Precautions ....................................... 101
- Fuel Quality - Petrol ....................................... 102
- Fuel Quality - Diesel ....................................... 102
- Running Out of Fuel ....................................... 102
- Catalytic Converter ........................................ 103
- Refuelling .......................................................... 103
- Fuel Consumption ........................................ 105
- Technical Specifications .............................. 106

## Transmission
- Manual Transmission .................................. 107
- Automatic Transmission .................................. 107
- Hill Start Assist .................................................. 110

## Brakes
- General Information ...................................... 112
- Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes ........ 112
- Parking Brake .................................................... 112
# Table of Contents

## Stability Control
- Principle of Operation .................................. 114
- Using Stability Control ................................ 114

## Parking Aids
- Principle of Operation .................................. 115
- Parking Aid ....................................................... 115
- Rear View Camera ......................................... 117

## Cruise Control
- Principle of Operation................................. 120
- Using Cruise Control.................................... 120

## Driving Aids
- Active City Stop............................................. 122

## Load Carrying
- General Information.................................... 124
- Rear Under Floor Storage.......................... 124
- Luggage Covers............................................. 124

## Towing
- Towing a Trailer.............................................. 125
- Tow Ball............................................................ 125
- Towing Points................................................. 128
- Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels............. 128

## Driving Hints
- Running-In...................................................... 130
- Cold Weather Precautions.......................... 130
- Driving Through Water................................ 130
- Floor Mats....................................................... 130

## Roadside Emergencies
- Hazard Warning Flashers.............................. 132
- First Aid Kit....................................................... 132
- Warning Triangle............................................. 132
- Jump-Starting the Vehicle............................. 132

## Fuses
- Fuse Box Locations.......................................... 134
- Fuse Specification Chart.............................. 135
- Changing a Fuse............................................... 141

## Maintenance
- General Information...................................... 142
- Opening and Closing the Bonnet................. 142
- Under Bonnet Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost............ 144
- Under Bonnet Overview - 1.25L Duratec-16V (Sigma)...... 145
- Under Bonnet Overview - 1.4L Duratec-16V (Sigma)...... 146
- Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L Duratec-16V (Sigma)...... 147
- Under Bonnet Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi (67kW/91PS)..... 148
- Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel..... 149
- Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost.............. 150
- Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.25L Duratec-16V (Sigma)...... 150
- Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.4L Duratec-16V (Sigma)...... 150
- Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel..... 151
- Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel..... 151
- Engine Oil Check............................................. 151
- Engine Coolant Check.................................... 152
- Brake and Clutch Fluid Check..................... 152
- Washer Fluid Check....................................... 152
- Changing the 12V Battery............................... 153
- Checking the Wiper Blades......................... 153
- Changing the Wiper Blades....................... 153
- Removing a Headlamp................................. 154
- Changing a Bulb - 3-Door.............................. 154
- Changing a Bulb - 5-Door.............................. 159
- Bulb Specification Chart............................. 164
# Table of Contents

Technical Specifications..................................165

**Vehicle Care**
Cleaning the Exterior..................................168
Cleaning the Interior..................................168
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....................169
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels..........................169

**Wheels and Tyres**
General Information..................................170
Temporary Mobility Kit..............................170
Tyre Care..................................................173
Using Winter Tyres..................................173
Using Snow Chains..................................174
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.............174
Changing a Road Wheel............................175
Technical Specifications...........................179

**Capacities and Specifications**
Vehicle Identification Plate.......................183
Vehicle Identification Number................184
Technical Specifications..........................184

**Audio System**
General Information.................................187
Audio unit - Vehicles With:
  AM/FM/CD...........................................188
Audio unit - Vehicles With:
  AM/FM/CD/Bluetooth...........................193
Audio unit - Vehicles With: Sony
  AM/FM/CD...........................................199
Digital Audio Broadcasting.......................205
Auxiliary Input Socket.............................206
Audio Troubleshooting.............................207

**SYNC™**
General Information.................................208
Using Voice Recognition...........................209
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.................212

SYNC™ Applications and Services.............222
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player........225
SYNC™ Troubleshooting............................229

**Appendices**
Electromagnetic compatibility.................236
End User Licence Agreement......................237
ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

Note: This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.

Note: Some of the illustrations in this manual may be used for different models, so may appear different to your vehicle. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.

Note: Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.

Protecting the Environment

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorised disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

- Safety alert
- See Owner's Manual
- Anti-lock braking system
- Avoid smoking, flames or sparks
- Battery
Introduction

- Battery acid
- Brake fluid - non petroleum based
- Brake system
- Cabin air filter
- Check fuel cap
- Child safety door lock or unlock
- Child seat lower anchor
- Child seat tether anchor
- Cruise control
- Do not open when hot
- Engine air filter
- Engine coolant
- Engine coolant temperature
- Engine oil
- Explosive gas
- Fan warning
- Fasten seat belt
- Front airbag
- Front fog lamps
- Fuel pump reset
- Fuse compartment
- Hazard warning flashers
- Heated rear window
- Heated windscreen
- Interior luggage compartment release
- Jack
- Lighting control
- Low tyre pressure warning
- Maintain correct fluid level
**REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION**

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

---

**Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs**

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner’s Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

---

**Collision Repairs**

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

---

**Warranty on Replacement Parts**

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

---

**MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT**

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others’ safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when
appropriately used, particularly in
emergency situations. Safety must be
paramount when using mobile
communications equipment to avoid
negating these benefits. Mobile
communication equipment includes, but
is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers,
portable email devices, text messaging
devices and portable two-way radios.

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in
loss of vehicle control, accident and
injury. We strongly recommend that
you use extreme caution when using any
device or feature that may take your focus
off the road. Your primary responsibility is
the safe operation of your vehicle. We
recommend against the use of any
handheld device while driving and that you
comply with all applicable laws.

**DATA RECORDING**

A large number of electronic components
of your vehicle contain data storage
modules temporarily or permanently
storing technical data about the condition
of the vehicle, events and errors.

In general, this technical information
dокументs the condition of parts,
modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system
  components (e.g. filling levels).

- Status messages of the vehicle and its
  individual components (e.g. number of
  wheel revolutions/rotational speed,
  deceleration, lateral acceleration).

- Malfunction and defects in important
  system components (e.g. lighting and
  brake system).

- Vehicle reactions in particular driving
  situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag,
  activation of the stability regulation
  system).

- Environmental conditions (e.g.
  temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and
help identification and correction of errors
as well as optimisation of vehicle
functions. Motion profiles indicating
travelled routes cannot be created with
these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works,
service processes, warranty cases, quality
assurance), employees of the service
network (including manufacturers) are
able to read out this technical information
from the event and error data storage
modules using special diagnostic devices.
If required, you will receive further
information. After an error has been
corrected, these data are deleted from the
error storage module or they are constantly
overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may
occur in which these technical data related
to other information (accident report,
damages on the vehicle, witness
statements etc.) may be associated with
a specific person – possibly, with the
assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed
upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location
in emergency cases) allow the
transmission of particular vehicle data
from the vehicle.
At a Glance

Front Exterior Overview

A  See Locking and Unlocking (page 34). See Keyless Entry (page 36).
B  See Active City Stop (page 122).
C  See Changing the Wiper Blades (page 153).
D  See Maintenance (page 142).
E  See Towing Points (page 128).
F  See Changing a Bulb (page 159).
G  Tyre pressures. See Technical Specifications (page 179).
H  See Changing a Road Wheel (page 175).
Vehicle Interior Overview

A  See Transmission (page 107).
B  See Locking and Unlocking (page 34).
D  See Head Restraints (page 84).
E  See Fastening the Seat Belts (page 22).
F  See Rear Seats (page 89).
G  See Manual Seats (page 85).
H  See Parking Brake (page 112).
I  See Opening and Closing the Bonnet (page 142).
At a Glance

Instrument Panel Overview
Left-Hand Drive
Right-Hand Drive

A Air vents. See Air Vents (page 77).
B Direction indicators. See Direction Indicators (page 50). Main beam. See Lighting Control (page 47).
C Instrument cluster. See Gauges (page 57). See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 58).
D Start button. See Starting and Stopping the Engine (page 93).
E Wiper lever. See Wipers and Washers (page 44).
F Information and entertainment display. See Information Displays (page 62).
G Audio unit. See Audio System (page 187).
H Power door lock button. See Locking and Unlocking (page 34).
I Hazard warning flasher switch. See Hazard Warning Flashers (page 132).
J Airbag warning lamp. See Passenger Airbag (page 24).
K Climate controls. See Climate Control (page 77).
K Heated rear window switch. See Climate Control (page 77).
At a Glance

K  Heated windscreen switch. See Climate Control (page 77).
L  Parking aid switch. See Parking Aids (page 115).
M  Heated seat switches. See Heated Seats (page 89).
N  Start-stop switch. See Start-Stop (page 99).
O  Ignition switch. See Ignition Switch (page 93).
P  Cruise control switches. See Using Cruise Control (page 120).
Q  Driver knee airbag. See Knee Airbag (page 26).
R  Horn.
S  Steering wheel adjustment. See Adjusting the Steering Wheel (page 42).
U  Bonnet release lever. See Opening and Closing the Bonnet (page 142).
A See Changing a Bulb (page 159).
B See Changing the Wiper Blades (page 153).
C See Changing a Bulb (page 159).
E See Towing Points (page 128).
F Tyre pressures. See Technical Specifications (page 179).
G See Changing a Road Wheel (page 175).
H See Refuelling (page 103).
INSTALLING CHILD SEATS

WARNINGS

⚠️ Use an approved child seat to secure children less than 59 inches (150 centimetres) tall in the rear seat.

⚠️ Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child seat on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it! You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child seat on the front seat. See Passenger Airbag (page 24).

⚠️ You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child seat. See Passenger Airbag (page 24).

⚠️ Read and follow the manufacturer’s instructions when you are installing a child seat.

Note: Mandatory use of child seats varies from country to country.

Only child seats certified to ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorised dealer.

Child Seats for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child seat as follows:

Baby Safety Seat

Secure children that weigh less than 29 pounds (13 kilogrammes) in a rearward facing baby safety seat (Group 0+) on the rear seat.
Child Safety

Child Safety Seat

![Child Safety Seat Image]

Secure children that weigh between 29 and 40 pounds (13 and 18 kilogrammes) in a child safety seat (Group 1) on the rear seat.

Booster Seats

**WARNINGS**

- Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seat belt.
- Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seat belt that is slack or twisted.
- Do not put the seat belt under your child's arm or behind its back.
- Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child’s height.
- Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.
- When using a child seat on a rear seat, the child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It must not touch the head restraint. If necessary remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 84).

Booster Seat (Group 2)

![Booster Seat Image]

Secure children that weigh more than 33 pounds (15 kilogrammes) but are less than 59 inches (150 centimetres) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seat belt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips.
**ISOFIX Anchor Points**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

**Note:** When you are purchasing an ISOFIX seat, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See *Child Seat Positioning* (page 18).

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child seats.

The ISOFIX system comprises two rigid attachment arms on the child seat that attach to anchor points on the outboard rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points are located behind the outboard rear seats for child seats with a top tether.

**Attaching a Child Seat with Top Tethers**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

⚠️ Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See *Luggage Covers* (page 124).

1. Route the tether strap to the anchor point.
Child Safety

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

WARNINGS

⚠️ See an authorised dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.

⚠️ Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child seat on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!

⚠️ When using a child seat with a support leg, the support leg must rest securely on the floor.

⚠️ When using a child seat with a seat belt, make sure that the seat belt is not slack or twisted.

⚠️ The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It must not touch the head restraint. If necessary remove the head restraint. See Head Restraints (page 84).

⚠️ You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child seat. See Head Restraints (page 84).

2. Push the child seat back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.

3. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child seat manufacturer’s instructions.
Child Safety

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seating positions</th>
<th>Mass group categories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Up to 22 lbs (10 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger seat with airbag <strong>ON</strong></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger seat with airbag <strong>OFF</strong></td>
<td>U¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear seats</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.

U¹ Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on the rear seat.

UF¹ Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on the rear seat.

**Note:** When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger's seat to its fully rearward position. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seat belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See **Seats** (page 84).

**ISOFIX Child Seats**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seating positions</th>
<th>Mass group categories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0+</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear facing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front seat</td>
<td>Size class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seat type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear outboard seat ISOFIX</td>
<td>Size class</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19
### Child Safety

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seating positions</th>
<th>Mass group categories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>O+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear facing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat type</td>
<td>IL&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear centre seat</td>
<td>Size class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not ISOFIX equipped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IL Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the semi-universal category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.

IUF Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

1 The ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child seat systems is defined by the capital letters A to G. These identification letters are displayed on the ISOFIX child seat.

2 At time of publishing the recommended Group O+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Romer Baby Safe. See an authorised dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.

3 At time of publishing the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Romer Duo. See an authorised dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.
CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

**WARNING**

⚠️ You cannot open the doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

---

**Left-Hand Side**

Turn anticlockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

**Right-Hand Side**

Turn clockwise to lock and anticlockwise to unlock.
FASTENING THE SEAT BELTS

WARNINGS

⚠️ Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the seat belt correctly if you do not hear a click.

⚠️ Make sure that your seat belt is securely stored away and is not outside your vehicle when closing the door.

Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Using Seat Belts During Pregnancy

⚠️ Position the seat belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Pregnant women should always wear their seat belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the centre of the chest.

SEAT BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

⚠️ Position the seat belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seat belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.
Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

**SEAT BELT MINDER**

**WARNING**

⚠️ The system will only provide protection when you use the seat belt correctly.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front seat belts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate when a front seat belt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your seat belt both the audible and visual warnings will switch off automatically after approximately five minutes.

---

Turning the Seat Belt Minder Off

See an authorised dealer.
Supplementary Restraints System

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

⚠️ Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags.

⚠️ Original text according to ECE R94.01: Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

⚠️ Wear a seat belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seat belt properly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See Sitting in the Correct Position (page 84).

⚠️ Have repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seat belts carried out by an authorised dealer.

⚠️ Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers.

⚠️ Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This could cause damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags.

⚠️ Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorised dealer.

Note: You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

Note: Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

DRIVER AIRBAG

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

PASSENGER AIRBAG
The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

**Switching the Passenger Airbag Off**

**WARNING**

⚠️ You must switch the airbag off when using a rearward facing child seat on the front seat.

Turn the switch to position A.

When you switch the ignition on, check that the airbag deactivation warning lamp illuminates.

**Switching the Passenger Airbag On**

**WARNING**

⚠️ You must switch the airbag on when you are not using a child seat on the front seat.

Turn the switch to position B.

**SIDE AIRBAGS**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorised dealer.

The airbags are located inside the seatback of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seatback to indicate this.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It will also deploy during significant frontal angled collisions. The airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.
KNEE AIRBAG

**WARNING**

⚠️ Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver’s knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

**Note:** The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.
GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 metres). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions (e.g. amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems). If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

REMOTE CONTROL

You can program a maximum of eight remote controls to your vehicle. This includes any that were supplied with your vehicle. The remote controls must remain inside your vehicle during the programming procedure. Fasten the front seat belts and close all doors to make sure that conflicting chimes do not sound during programming.

Programming a New Remote Control

1. Turn the ignition key from position 0 to position II four times within six seconds.
2. Turn the ignition to position 0. A tone sounds to indicate that it is now possible to program a remote control.
3. Press any button on a new remote control within 10 seconds. A tone will sound as confirmation.
4. Repeat step three within 10 seconds for each new remote control. Do not remove the key from the ignition when pressing the button on the remote control.
5. Switch the ignition back on (position II) or wait for 10 seconds without programming another remote control to end the key programming. Only the remote controls which you have just programmed are now able to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

Note: When you press the unlock button either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver’s door and the tailgate are unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.
Changing the Remote Control Battery

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.

Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade

1. Insert a screwdriver as far as possible into the slot on the side of the remote control, push it toward the key blade and remove the key blade.

2. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to start separating the two halves of the remote control.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

3. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.

4. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.

5. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing downwards.

6. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.

7. Install the key blade.
Remote Control Without a Folding Key Blade

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.
3. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to start separating the two halves of the remote control.
4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.

**Note:** *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.
6. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing downwards.
7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Install the key blade.
REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement or additional keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorised dealer. Your dealer can program the remote controls for your vehicle or you may be able to program them yourself. See Remote Control (page 27).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorised dealer.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. You can activate these restricted modes on all but one key programmed to your vehicle. Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as an administrator key or admin key.

An admin key can be used to:
• create a restricted key
• program optional MyKey settings
• clear all MyKey features altogether.

Once a key has been programmed you can access the following information using the information display control:
• How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
• The total distance your vehicle has been driven with a MyKey.

Note: For vehicles fitted with keyless start, when both a MyKey and an admin key are present, the admin key will be recognised by your vehicle to start the engine.

Standard Settings

These settings cannot be changed:
• Seat Belt Minder. This cannot be disabled and the five minute timer does not expire. The audio system is muted when MyKey seat belt minder is activated.
• Early low fuel warning. Warnings are displayed in the information display followed by an audible tone when the fuel tank is one eighth full or less.
• The parking aid and active city stop systems are forced on.

Optional Settings

These settings can be configured immediately after a MyKey is first created or changed later using an admin key:
• Vehicle speed limit. Visual warnings are displayed followed by an audible tone when your vehicle speed has reached this limit.
• Various vehicle speed warnings. Visual warnings are displayed followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
• Audio system maximum volume. A message in the audio system is displayed when attempting to exceed the limited volume.

CREATING A MYKEY

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition or, if your vehicle is fitted with keyless starting, hold the key next to the steering column. See Keyless Starting (page 93).
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Press the MENU button, select MyKey and press the OK button.
4. Select Create MyKey and press the OK button.
5. When prompted, press and hold the OK button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted the next time you use it to start your vehicle.

The key is successfully programmed. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

Programming and Changing Optional Settings

You can program optional settings for the keys.
All programmed keys can be cleared within the same key cycle in which a key was programmed, otherwise an admin key is required to clear the keys. See Clearing All MyKeys (page 32).

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press the MENU button, select MyKey and press the OK button.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to select an optional feature.
4. Press the OK or right arrow button to scroll through the settings.
5. Press the OK or right arrow button to make a selection.

### CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

All programmed MyKeys can be cleared within the same key cycle in which a MyKey was created, otherwise an admin key is required to clear the keys.

To clear all MyKeys (which removes all restrictions and returns them to admin key status), use the information display control to do the following:

1. Access the main menu and select MyKey.
2. Scroll to Clear All and press the OK button.
3. Hold the OK button until ALL MYKEYS CLEARED is displayed.

### CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

Keys programmed to the vehicle are shown in the information display:

- **MYKEY MILES:** Tracks mileage when a restricted key is used. If mileage does not accumulate as expected, then the key is not being used by the intended user. The only way to reset this to zero is by resetting the keys. If the mileage is lower than the last time you checked, then the key system has been recently reset.
- **#MYKEY(S):** Indicates how many restricted keys are programmed to the vehicle. Can also be used to detect deletion of a restricted key.
- **#ADMIN KEY(S):** Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to the vehicle. Can also be used to detect if an additional key has been programmed to the vehicle.

### MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Potential Causes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I cannot program a key.</td>
<td>The key in the ignition does not have admin privileges. The key in the ignition is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key). The remote control is not situated correctly by the backup slot (vehicles with keyless start).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I cannot program the optional settings.</td>
<td>The key in the ignition does not have admin privileges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>Potential Causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No keys are programmed to the vehicle. See <strong>Creating a MyKey</strong> (page 31).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I cannot clear the restricted keys.</td>
<td>Key in the ignition does not have admin privileges. No restricted keys are programmed to the vehicle. See <strong>Creating a MyKey</strong> (page 31).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lost the only admin key.</td>
<td>Purchase a new key from an authorised dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lost a key.</td>
<td>Purchase a new key from an authorised dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No restricted key functions with keyless entry (keyless start).</td>
<td>An admin key is present at engine start-up. No restricted keys are programmed to the vehicle. See <strong>Creating a MyKey</strong> (page 31).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restricted key programmed total includes one additional key.</td>
<td>An unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as a restricted key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admin keys programmed total includes one additional key.</td>
<td>An unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as an admin key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey miles do not accumulate.</td>
<td>The restricted key is not being used by the intended user. The key system has been reset.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Locks

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

Remote Control
The remote control can be used any time your vehicle is not running.

Unlocking the Doors

Note: You can unlock the driver door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.

Note: When you lock your vehicle for several weeks, the remote control will be switched off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once will enable the remote control.

One-Stage Unlocking

Note: This is the default setting with your remote control.

Press the button to unlock all the doors.

The direction indicators will flash.

Two-Stage Unlocking

Press the button to unlock the driver door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors.

The direction indicators will flash.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function using the remote control so that only the driver door is unlocked. This will enable two-stage unlocking. See Remote Control (page 27).

Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all the doors. The direction indicators will flash twice.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, and the direction indicators will flash twice if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Note: If any door or the luggage compartment is not closed, or if the bonnet is not closed on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the direction indicators will not flash.

Double Locking

WARNING

Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. You will not be able to unlock the doors from the inside if you have double locked them.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if the front doors are both closed.

Press the button twice within three seconds.

Automatic Re-locking

The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

Press the button to lock and unlock all the doors. For item location: See At a Glance (page 9). The lamp illuminates with the doors locked.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key

Note: Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.

Locking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Double Locking with the Key

Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.

Unlocking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Unlocking the Doors with the Interior Door Handles

You can unlock individual doors by pulling the relevant interior door handle. Pulling the driver interior door handle will unlock all the doors.

Emergency Locking with the Key

Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn anticlockwise to lock.

Note: If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you will only turn off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.

Note: If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

Note: When the central locking function fails to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.
MANUAL LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

⚠️ It is extremely dangerous to ride in the cargo area, inside or outside of your vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that does not have seats and seat belts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt correctly.

⚠️ Make sure that the liftgate is closed to prevent exhaust fumes from being drawn into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate door open, keep your vehicle well ventilated so outside air does not enter your vehicle.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything (bike rack, etc.) from the spoiler, glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

To Open the Liftgate

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, then pull on the outside handle.

**Opening With the Remote Control**

Press the button twice within three seconds.

To Close the Liftgate

A recessed grip is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

KEYLESS ENTRY

General Information

**WARNING**

⚠️ The system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as mobile phones.

The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.
Note: If the system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

The system allows you to operate your vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately five feet (one and a half metres) from the front door handles and the liftgate.

Passive Key

Your vehicle can be locked and unlocked with the passive key. You can use the passive key as a remote control. See Locking and Unlocking (page 34).

Locking Your Vehicle

WARNING

Your vehicle does not lock itself automatically. If you do not press a locking button your vehicle will remain unlocked.

Locking buttons are located on each of the front doors.

For central locking and to arm the alarm, press a locking button once.

For double locking and to arm the alarm, press a locking button twice within three seconds.

Note: Your vehicle will remain locked for approximately three seconds. When the delay period is over, you can open the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the liftgate have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

Liftgate

Note: The liftgate cannot be closed and will pop back up if the passive key is located inside the luggage compartment with the doors locked.

Note: If a second valid passive key is located within the liftgate detection range, the liftgate can be closed.

Unlocking Your Vehicle

Note: When your vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to prevent your vehicle battery running out of charge. When your vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. To exit the energy-saving mode, unlock your vehicle.
Press a locking button once.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the liftgate have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

**Unlocking Only the Driver's Door**

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver’s door and the liftgate are unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 27). Note the following:

If the driver’s door is the first door which is opened, the other doors will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button on the instrument panel. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

**Disabled Keys**

Any keys left inside your vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

You cannot use a disabled key to switch the ignition on or start the engine.

You must enable all passive keys again in order to use them.

To enable all your passive keys, unlock your vehicle using a passive key or the remote control unlocking function.

All passive keys will then be enabled if you switch the ignition on or you start your vehicle with a valid key.

**Locking and Unlocking the Doors With the Key Blade**

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade and insert it into the lock.

**Note:** Only the driver's door handle has a lock cylinder.
PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation
The engine immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Coded Keys
Note: Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognising your key as a valid one.
Note: Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Ask an authorised dealer for further information. Have replacement keys recoded together with your existing keys.

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorised dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain additional keys from an authorised dealer.

Arming the Engine Immobiliser
After you switch the ignition off the engine immobiliser will arm automatically after a short time.

Disarming the Engine Immobiliser
The engine immobiliser is disarmed automatically when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, and the message Immobiliser malfunction Service now is shown in the display, this indicates a malfunction. Have the immobiliser checked immediately.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM

Alarm System
Your vehicle may have one of the following alarm systems:
- Perimeter alarm.
- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors.
- Category one alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.

Perimeter Alarm
The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorised access to your vehicle through the doors and the bonnet. It also protects the audio unit.

Interior Sensors

WARNINGS
- Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.
- Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.
Security

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorised intrusion by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

**Battery Back-up Sounder**

The battery back-up sounder is an extra alarm system which will sound a siren when the alarm is triggered. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

**Triggering the Alarm**

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If you switch the ignition on without a valid key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes. Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

**Full and Reduced Guard**

**Full Guard**

Full guard is the standard setting.
In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** This may result in false alarms if animals or moving objects are inside your vehicle.

**Reduced Guard**

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current ignition cycle only. The alarm will reset to full guard the next time you switch the ignition on.

**Ask on Exit (If Equipped)**

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

If you select *Ask on Exit*, the message *Reduced guard?* appears in the information display each time you switch the ignition off. See *Information Messages* (page 66).

If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears.

If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

**Selecting Full or Reduced Guard**

**Note:** Selecting *Reduced* does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current ignition cycle. If you regularly set the alarm to reduced guard, select *Ask on Exit*.

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See *General Information* (page 66).

**Arming the Alarm**

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See *Locks* (page 34).
Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Perimeter Alarm
Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Category One Alarm
Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles with Keyless Entry

Note: A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See Keyless Entry (page 36).

Perimeter Alarm
Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching the ignition on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Category One Alarm
Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching the ignition on within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.
ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See Sitting in the Correct Position (page 84).

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.
3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:

A  Volume up
B  Seek up, next or end call
Steering Wheel

C  Volume down
D  Seek down, previous or accept call

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:
•  tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
•  play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:
•  tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
•  seek through a track.

VOICE CONTROL

Press the button to select or deselect voice control. See SYNC™ (page 208).
**WINDSCREEN WIPERS**

**Note:** Fully defrost the windscreen before switching on the windscreen wipers.

**Note:** Make sure the windscreen wipers are switched off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** Install new wiper blades as soon as they begin to leave bands of water and smears on the windscreen.

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windscreen washers before wiping a dry windscreen.

---

**Intermittent Wipe**

A  Short wipe interval
B  Intermittent wipe
C  Long wipe interval

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

**Speed Dependent Wipers**

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes will decrease.

---

**AUTOWIPERS**

**Note:** Fully defrost the windscreen before switching on the windscreen wipers.

**Note:** Make sure the windscreen wipers are switched off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** Install new wiper blades as soon as they begin to leave bands of water and smears on the windscreen.

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, dipped beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windscreen wipers continuously.

**Note:** Wet road conditions can cause unexpected wiping or smearing.
To reduce smearing we recommend the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers.
- Switch to normal or high speed wipe.
- Switch the autowipers off.

The wipers will function when water is detected on the windscreen. The rain sensor will continue to monitor the amount of water on the windscreen and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. On minimum autowipe, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windscreen. On maximum autowipe, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windscreen.

Keep the outside of the windscreen clean. Sensor performance will be affected if the area around the interior mirror is dirty. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or flies hit the windscreen.

**WINDSCREEN WASHERS**

*Note:* Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

Push the button to operate the washers. They will operate for a maximum of 10 seconds. When you release the button, the wipers will operate for a short time.

**REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS**

**Intermittent Wipe**

Pull the lever toward you.
Reverse Gear Wipe

The rear wiper will turn on automatically when selecting reverse gear if:

- the rear wiper is not already switched on
- the wiper lever is in position A, B, C or D
- the front wiper is operating (when set to position B).

The rear wiper will follow the front wiper interval (at intermittent or normal speed).

Rear Window Washer

**Note:** *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*

Pull the lever toward you to operate the washers. They will operate for a maximum of 10 seconds. When you release the lever, the wiper will operate for a short time.
GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL

Lighting Control Positions

A Off
B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, licence plate lamps and rear lamps
C Headlamps

Parking Lamps

Note: Prolonged use of the parking lamps will cause the battery to run out of charge. Switch the ignition off. Turn the lighting control to position B.
Main Beams

Pull the lever fully toward you to switch the main beams on. Pull the lever fully toward you again to switch the main beams off.

Headlamp Flasher

Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

Autolamps

The headlamps will switch on and off automatically in low light situations or during poor weather.

The headlamps will remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. You can adjust the time delay using the information display controls. See Information Displays (page 62).

Note: It may be necessary to switch your headlamps on manually in severe weather conditions.

Note: If you have autolamps on, you can only switch the main beam on once autolamps has switched the headlamps on.

Note: If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, dipped beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windscreen wipers continuously.

Instrument Lighting Dimmer

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.
DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

**WARNING**

Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not turn on the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to switch the headlamps on under these conditions may result in a collision.

The system switches the headlamps on in low light situations.

To switch the system on:
1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Turn the lighting control to the off, autolamp or parking lamp position.
3. Make sure the transmission selector lever is not in position **P**.

FRONT FOG LAMPS

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.
You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

REAR FOG LAMPS

**WARNINGS**

Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is restricted to less than 164 feet (50 metres).

Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 164 feet (50 metres).

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.
You can switch the fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or dipped beam headlamps are on.

HEADLAMP LEVELLING

**Note:** Vehicles with Xenon headlamps have automatic headlamp levelling.
You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to your vehicle load.

**Recommended Headlamp Levelling Switch Positions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Load</th>
<th>Load in luggage compartment</th>
<th>Switch position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front seats</td>
<td>Second row seats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2**</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Max</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 183).

**Van only**

**DIRECTION INDICATORS**

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

**INTERIOR LAMPS**

**Courtesy Lamp**

A Off
B Door contact
C On
If you set the switch to position B, the courtesy lamp will illuminate when you unlock or open a door or the liftgate. If you leave a door open with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamp will go off automatically after some time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch it back on, switch the ignition on for a short time.

The courtesy lamp will also illuminate when you switch the ignition off. It will go off automatically after a short time or when you start the engine.

If you set the switch to position C with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamp will illuminate. It will go off automatically after a short time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch it back on, switch the ignition on for a short time.

**Reading Lamps**

If you switch the ignition off, the reading lamps will go off automatically after some time to prevent your vehicle battery from discharging. To switch them back on, switch the ignition on for a short time.
POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

⚠️ Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

⚠️ When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Note: You may hear a rumbling noise when just one of the windows are open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

Press the switch to open the window. Lift the switch to close the window.

One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Window Lock

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It will illuminate when the rear window controls are locked.

Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

⚠️ When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. The bounce-back feature is now disabled and you can close the window manually. The window will go past the point of resistance and you can close it fully. See an authorised dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

**Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature**

**WARNING**

The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
5. Release the switch.
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
8. Reset and repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

**Accessory Delay (If Equipped)**

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you have switched the ignition off or until either front door is opened.

**EXTERIOR MIRRORS**

**Power Exterior Mirrors**

**WARNING**

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.

![Mirror Diagram]

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
5. Release the switch.
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
8. Reset and repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

**Automatic Folding and Unfolding**

**Note:** If the mirrors have been folded using the manual fold button they can only be unfolded using the manual fold button.
The mirrors will fold automatically when you lock your vehicle with the key, the remote control or a keyless entry system request. The mirrors will unfold when you unlock your vehicle with the key, the remote control, a keyless entry system request, the driver’s interior door handle or starting the engine.

**Manual Folding and Unfolding**

*Note: You can only fold the mirrors when the mirror switch is set to position B off.*

The electric folding mirrors operate with the ignition on.

*Note: You can operate the mirrors (mirror tilting and folding) for several minutes after you switch the ignition off. If you open a door you can no longer operate the mirrors.*

Press the downward arrow to fold or unfold the mirrors.

If you press the switch again while the mirrors are moving, they will stop and reverse the direction of movement.

*Note: When the mirrors are operated often during a short period of time, the system may become inoperable for a period of time to prevent damage due to overheating.*

---

**Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors**

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

---

**INTERIOR MIRROR**

**WARNING**

*Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.*

*Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

**Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)**

*Note: Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear centre passenger or raised rear centre head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when reversing.
GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can also operate the power windows with the ignition off using the global opening and global closing function.

**Note:** Global opening will only operate for a short period of time after you have unlocked your vehicle using the remote control.

**Note:** Global closing will only operate if you have set the memory correctly for each window. See *Power Windows* (page 52).

### Global Opening

To open all the windows:
1. Press and release the remote control unlock button.
2. Press and hold the remote control unlock button for at least three seconds.

Press the lock or unlock button to stop the opening function.

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

**WARNING**

Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, press the lock or unlock button immediately to stop.

To close all the windows, press and hold the remote control lock button for at least three seconds. Press the lock or unlock button to stop the closing function. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

Vehicles With Keyless Entry

To close all the windows, press and hold the remote control lock button for at least three seconds. Press the lock or unlock button to stop the closing function. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.


**Windows and Mirrors**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, touch a door handle lock sensor to stop.

**Note:** Global closing can be switched on using the driver’s door handle. Global opening and closing can also be switched on using the buttons on the passive key.

To close all the windows, press and hold the driver’s door handle for at least three seconds. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.
Instrument Cluster

GAUGES

A  Tachometer
B  Information display and engine coolant temperature gauge
C  Speedometer
D  Fuel gauge
E  Tripmeter reset button

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature the indicator will remain in the centre section.

Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.
WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.

Anti-lock Braking System Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer.

Brake System Warning Lamp

It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer immediately.

Cruise Control Indicator

It will illuminate when you switch this feature on. See Using Cruise Control (page 120).

Direction Indicator

Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burnt out bulb. See Changing a Bulb (page 159).

Door Ajar Warning Lamp

Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door, the bonnet or the liftgate is not closed properly.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp

WARNING

Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer immediately.

WARNING

Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.
If it stays on after starting or illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level. See Engine Coolant Check (page 152).

**Engine Oil Warning Lamp**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer immediately.

If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See Engine Oil Check (page 151).

**Engine Warning Lamps**

- Malfunction Indicator Lamp
- Powertrain Warning Lamp

**All Vehicles**

If either lamp illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. The engine will continue to run but it may have limited power. If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer immediately.

**WARNING**

⚠️ Have this checked immediately.

If both lamps illuminate together, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so (continued use may cause reduced power and cause the engine to stop). Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. If the engine restarts have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer immediately. When the engine does not restart have your vehicle checked before continuing your journey.

**Front Airbag Warning Lamp**

If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer.

**Front Fog Lamps Indicator**

It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

**Frost Warning Lamp**

**WARNING**

⚠️ Even if the temperature rises to above +39ºF (4ºC) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.

It will illuminate and glow orange when the outside air temperature is between 39ºF (4ºC) and 32ºF (0ºC). It will glow red when the temperature is below 32ºF (0ºC).
Instrument Cluster

Glow Plug Indicator
If it illuminates, wait until it extinguishes before starting.

Headlamp Indicator
It will illuminate when you switch the headlamp dipped beam or the side and tail lamps on.

Main Beam Indicator
It will illuminate when you switch the main beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Ignition Warning Lamp
If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer immediately.

Information Indicator
It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. See Information Messages (page 66).

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp
If it illuminates, refuel as soon as possible.

Rear Fog Lamps Indicator
It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Seat Belt Minder Warning Lamp
It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your seat belt. See Seat Belt Minder (page 23).

Shift Indicator
It will illuminate to inform you that shifting to a higher gear may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.

Stability Control Indicator
While driving, it flashes when the system is operating. After you switch the ignition on, if it does not illuminate or illuminates continuously while driving, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction, the system switches off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.
It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

Start-Stop Indicator
It will illuminate when the engine has automatically stopped. It will flash to inform you when the engine needs to restart. See Start-Stop (page 99). See Information Messages (page 66).
AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Automatic Transmission
Sounds when you open the driver's door and do not move the transmission selector lever to position P.

Key Outside Car

Vehicles With Keyless System
Sounds when you close the door, the engine is running and the system does not detect a passive key inside your vehicle.

Headlamps On
Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Low Fuel
Sounds when the low fuel warning lamp illuminates.

Seat Belt Minder

WARNINGS
⚠️ The seat belt minder remains in stand-by mode when the front seat belts have been fastened. It will sound if either seat belt is unfastened.

⚠️ Do not sit on top of a fastened seat belt to prevent the seat belt minder from coming on. The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the seat belt properly.

Sounds when your vehicle speed exceeds the pre-determined limit and the front seat belts are unfastened. The chime will stop after a period of time.
GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and that you comply with all applicable laws.

Note: The information display will remain on for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Device List

The icon changes to show the current function in use.

- **CD**
- **Radio**
- **Auxiliary input**

Information Display Controls

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on your audio unit. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

To use the controls:

- Press the up or down arrow button to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a submenu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu Structure - Information Display

You can access the menu using the information display control.

Note: Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

SYNC-Media allows you to access the SYNC® features.
# Information Displays

## SYNC-Phone

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dial a number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phonebook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call history</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Dial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text messaging</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BT Devices</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Feature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ford EcoMode</td>
<td>Bluetooth on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC-Settings</td>
<td>Set defaults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC-Settings</td>
<td>Master reset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC-Settings</td>
<td>Install on SYNC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC-Settings</td>
<td>System info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC-Settings</td>
<td>Voice settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC-Apps</td>
<td>Route options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation</td>
<td>Map display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation</td>
<td>Assistance options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation</td>
<td>Personal data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio settings</td>
<td>Reset all settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio settings</td>
<td>Adaptive volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio settings</td>
<td>Sound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio settings</td>
<td>NAV audio mixing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Information Displays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DSP settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSP equalizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>News</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alt. frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDS Regional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAB Service link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traction Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active City Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deflation detection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hill start assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Park lock control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rain sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powerfold mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambient light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto time (GPS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set time zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summer time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24-hour mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measure Unit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Information Displays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey</td>
<td>create MyKey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Traction control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ESC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Active City Stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speed limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speed warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volume limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clear all MyKeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey active</td>
<td>Information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Press the up or down arrow button to scroll through the list.

#### CLOCK

**Type 1**

To adjust the clock, switch the ignition on and press buttons H or M on the information and entertainment display as necessary.

**Type 2**

*Note:* Use the information display to adjust the clock. See General Information (page 62).

#### TRIP COMPUTER

Press the button to scroll through the displays.

You can reset the trip, average fuel consumption and average speed. Scroll to the required display, then press and hold the button, this will reset the trip computer.

The trip computer includes the following information displays:
Information Displays

Trip Odometer

Registers the distance travelled of individual journeys.

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Average Fuel Consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Instantaneous Fuel Consumption

Indicates the current fuel consumption.

Stationary Fuel Consumption

Indicates the current fuel consumption while stationary.

Average Speed

Indicates the average speed calculated since the function was last reset.

Distance Odometer

Registers the total distance your vehicle has travelled.

PERSONALISED SETTINGS

Measure Units

To swap between imperial and metric units, scroll to this display and press the OK button. Swapping between imperial and metric units will affect the following displays:

• Distance to empty.
• Average fuel consumption.
• Instantaneous fuel consumption.
• Average speed.

Switching Chimes Off

The following chimes can be switched off:

• Warning messages.
• Information messages.

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on the options on your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.
Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

**Active City Stop**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active City Stop Auto braking</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Active City Stop</strong> (page 122).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active City Stop Sensor blocked</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Active City Stop</strong> (page 122).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean screen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active City Stop not available</td>
<td></td>
<td>See <strong>Active City Stop</strong> (page 122).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active City Stop off</td>
<td></td>
<td>See <strong>Active City Stop</strong> (page 122).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Airbag**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Airbag malfunction</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Information Displays

### Alarm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alarm triggered Check vehicle</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See Security (page 39).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior Scan deactivated</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See Security (page 39).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm system malfunction Service required</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Doors Open

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Driver door open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Vehicle is moving. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver side rear door open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Vehicle is moving. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger door open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Vehicle is moving. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger side rear door open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Vehicle is moving. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boot open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Vehicle is moving. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonnet open</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Vehicle is moving. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and close. See Opening and Closing the Bonnet (page 142).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver door open</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Vehicle not moving. Close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver side rear door open</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Vehicle not moving. Close.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Information Displays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonnet open</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Vehicle not moving. Close. See <strong>Opening and Closing the Bonnet</strong> (page 142).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Engine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine preheating</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Starting a Diesel Engine</strong> (page 96).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Engine Immobiliser

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Immobiliser malfunction</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service now</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hill Start Assist

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hill start assist not available</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Hill Start Assist</strong> (page 110).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Keyless System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Key not detected</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Keyless Entry</strong> (page 36).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key outside car</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Keyless Entry</strong> (page 36).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Battery low</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Remote Control</strong> (page 27).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace battery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn ignition off</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Keyless Starting</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use POWER button</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press brake to start</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Keyless Starting</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press clutch to start</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Keyless Starting</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close boot or use spare key</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Keyless Entry</strong> (page 36).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering lock engaged</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Steering Wheel Lock</strong> (page 95).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn steering wheel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Lighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Left indicator malfunction</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Changing a Bulb</strong> (page 159).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change bulb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right indicator malfunction</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Changing a Bulb</strong> (page 159).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change bulb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Information Displays

### Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid Level low Service now</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>See <strong>Brake and Clutch Fluid Check</strong> (page 152).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake system malfunction Stop safely</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil pressure low Stop safely</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>See <strong>Engine Oil Check</strong> (page 151).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine malfunction Service now</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto wiper/lights malfunction Service required</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil change due Service required</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MyKey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MyKey vehicle at top speed</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and your vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey active Drive safely</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Displays when MyKey is active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey Speed limited to XX mph</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Displays when starting your vehicle and MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey Speed limited to XX km/h</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Displays when starting your vehicle and MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Information Displays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MyKey Check speed Drive safely</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Displays when MyKey is active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey Vehicle near top speed</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buckle up to unmute audio</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Displays when a MyKey is in use and Belt-Minder is activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey Park aid cannot be deactivated</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Displays when a MyKey is in use and park aid is activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey ESC cannot be deactivated</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Displays when programming a MyKey.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Parking Brake

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Park brake applied</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>See <strong>Parking Brake</strong> (page 112).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Park brake applied</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Parking Brake</strong> (page 112).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Stability Control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Traction control off</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Using Stability Control</strong> (page 114).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sport mode</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Using Stability Control</strong> (page 114).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic stability control off</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Using Stability Control</strong> (page 114).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Information Displays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABS malfunction Service now</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP malfunction Next service</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESP off</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Using Stability Control</strong> (page 114).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Starting and Stopping the Engine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine start pending Please wait</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>See <strong>Starting and Stopping the Engine</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine start cancelled</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Starting and Stopping the Engine</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diesel filter overloaded See manual</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Starting and Stopping the Engine</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press brake to start</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Starting and Stopping the Engine</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press clutch to start</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Starting and Stopping the Engine</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press brake and clutch to start</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Starting and Stopping the Engine</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranking time exceeded</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Starting and Stopping the Engine</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Information Displays

Start-stop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto StartStop Switch ignition off</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See Start-Stop (page 99).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>The engine needs to be restarted, press a pedal to start. See Start-Stop (page 99).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto StartStop Manual start required</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto StartStop Select neutral</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See Start-Stop (page 99).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Steering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power steering malfunction Service now</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering lock malfunction Stop safely</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering lock malfunction Service now</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Full steering will be maintained but you will need to exert greater force on the steering wheel. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Tyre pressure monitoring system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check tyre pressures</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>The pressure in one or more tyres has dropped. Check as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre pressure system malfunction</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Permanent malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service required</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre monitor malfunction</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Permanent malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service required</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre sensors not detected</td>
<td>amber</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Transmission

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission malfunction</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service now</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission overtemperature</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Move the transmission selector lever to position N or P and apply the parking brake. Switch off the ignition until the transmission has cooled and the message disappears from the display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop safely</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use brake</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop safely</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle not in Park</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See <strong>Automatic Transmission</strong> (page 107). See <strong>Starting and Stopping the Engine</strong> (page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to start</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See **Automatic Transmission** (page 107). See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 93).
## Information Displays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Message indicator</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Press brake to start</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See [Starting and Stopping the Engine](page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select N to start</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See [Automatic Transmission](page 107). See [Starting and Stopping the Engine](page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door open apply brake</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See [Automatic Transmission](page 107). See [Starting and Stopping the Engine](page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission hot Stop or speed up</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to let it cool or speed up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission hot Wait...</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Wait as needed to let it cool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission ready</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Your vehicle is ready to drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press brake to unlock selector lever</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See [Automatic Transmission](page 107). See [Starting and Stopping the Engine](page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selector lever unlocked</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See [Automatic Transmission](page 107). See [Starting and Stopping the Engine](page 93).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission not in Park</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>See [Automatic Transmission](page 107). See [Starting and Stopping the Engine](page 93).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Outside Air
Keep the air intakes in front of the windscreen free from obstruction (snow, leaves etc.) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

Recirculated Air

WARNING
Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for demisting the windscreen.

The air currently in the passenger compartment will be recirculated. Outside air will not enter your vehicle.

Heating
Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

Air Conditioning

Note: The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 39°F (4°C).
Note: If you use the air conditioning, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher.

Air is directed through the evaporator where it is cooled. Humidity is extracted from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The resulting condensation is directed to the outside of your vehicle and it is therefore normal if you see a small pool of water under your vehicle.

General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate
Fully close all the windows.

Warming the Interior
Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windscreen and the door windows.

Cooling the Interior
Direct the air toward your face.

AIR VENTS

Centre Air Vents

Side Air Vent
**MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL**

**A**  **Fan speed control:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired fan speed or switch off. If you switch the fan off, the windscreen may fog up.

**B**  **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the button illuminates and the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odours from entering your vehicle.

**C**  **Air distribution control:** Adjust to select the desired air distribution.

**D**  **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired temperature. If you select **MAX A/C** and also press buttons B and F, the system distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning.

**E**  **Heated rear window:** Press the button to defog and clear the rear window of a thin covering of ice.

**F**  **Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.

**G**  **Heated windscreen:** Press the button to defog and clear the windscreen of a thin covering of ice.
AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

A  Fan speed: Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Rotate the control to select the desired fan speed. The setting is shown in the display.

B  Instrument panel: Press the button to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.

C  Windscreen: Press the button to distribute air through the windscreen air vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windscreen of a thin covering of ice.

D  MAX Defrost: Press the button to distribute outside air through the windscreen air vents. Air conditioning is automatically selected. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position, you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the fan speed and temperature control. Press the AUTO button to return to auto mode.

E  Heated windscreen: Press the button to defog and clear the windscreen of a thin covering of ice.

F  Temperature control: Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired temperature.

G  Air conditioning: Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.
**Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odours from entering your vehicle.

**Off button:** Press the button to switch the system off.

**Heated rear window:** Press the button to defog and clear the rear window of a thin covering of ice.

**Footwell:** Press the button to distribute air through the footwell air vents.

**AUTO:** Press the button to select automatic operation. The system automatically controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the airflow to reach and maintain your previously selected temperature.

### Temperature Control

You can set the temperature between 61°F (16°C) and 82°F (28°C) in steps of 1°F (0.5°C). In position low, the system switches to permanent cooling. In position high, the system switches to permanent heating.

**Note:** If you select either position low or high, the system will not regulate a stable temperature.

### HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

#### General Hints

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** A small amount of air may be felt from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

**Note:** Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windscreen.

#### Manual Climate Control

**Note:** To reduce fogging of the windscreen during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windscreen air vents position. Increase the temperature and fan speed to improve clearing, if required.
**Automatic Climate Control**

*Note:* Do not adjust the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold. The system automatically adjusts to the previously stored settings. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

*Note:* At low ambient temperatures with *AUTO* selected, the air stream is directed toward the windscreen and side windows for as long as the engine remains cold.

*Note:* When the system is switched off, outside air is prevented from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** When the system is in *AUTO* mode and the interior and exterior temperatures are high, the system automatically selects recirculated air to maximize cooling of the interior. When the selected air temperature is reached, the system automatically selects outside air.

*Note:* When you select windscreen defrosting and defogging, the instrument panel and footwell level functions automatically switch off and air conditioning switches on. Outside air flows into your vehicle.

**Heating the Interior Quickly**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehilces With Manual Climate Control</th>
<th>Vehilces With Automatic Climate Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.</td>
<td>Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.</td>
<td>Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.</td>
<td>Press the footwell button to distribute air to the footwell air vents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommended Settings for Heating**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehilces With Manual Climate Control</th>
<th>Vehilces With Automatic Climate Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.</td>
<td>Press the <em>AUTO</em> button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.</td>
<td>Adjust the temperature control setting to the desired setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell and windscreen air vents position.</td>
<td>Close the instrument panel air vents. Open the side air vents and direct them toward the side windows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cooling the Interior Quickly

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicles With Manual Climate Control</th>
<th>Vehicles With Automatic Climate Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Adjust the temperature control setting to low.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommended Settings for Cooling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicles With Manual Climate Control</th>
<th>Vehicles With Automatic Climate Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicles With Manual Climate Control</th>
<th>Vehicles With Automatic Climate Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Apply the parking brake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Move the transmission selector lever to position P or neutral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Adjust the fan speed to the lowest speed setting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Climate Control

## Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicles With Manual Climate Control</th>
<th>Vehicles With Automatic Climate Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel and footwell air vents positions.</td>
<td>Press the windscreen defrosting and defogging button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Press the A/C button.</td>
<td>Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Close the instrument panel vents.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions

1. Adjust the temperature control to the lowest setting.
2. Press the A/C and recirculated air buttons.
3. Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting initially and then adjust it to suit the desired comfort level.

### HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

#### Heated Windows

Use the heated windows to defrost or demist the windscreen or rear window.

**Note:** *The heated windows operate only when the engine is running.*

---

### Heated Windscreen

### Heated Rear Window

### Heated Exterior Mirrors

Electric exterior mirrors have a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. They will switch on automatically when you switch the heated rear window on.
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seat belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a collision. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a collision or during heavy braking.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.

Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimetres) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.

Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.

Position the shoulder strap of the seat belt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNING

Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimise the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

Adjusting the Head Restraints

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seat belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

• Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.

• Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
Removing the Head Restraints

Front Head Restraint

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Using a suitable implement release the retaining clip.

Rear Outer Head Restraint

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Using a suitable implement release the retaining clip.

Rear Centre Head Restraint

Press the locking buttons and remove the head restraint.

MANUAL SEATS - 3-DOOR

WARNINGS

⚠️ Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving. This may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

⚠️ Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seatback to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a collision.
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

**WARNING**

Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch. A seat which is not fully engaged in its catch could move when your vehicle is moving. This may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Folding the Seatback Forward

**Note:** The memory function is only available on the driver seat.

1. Pull the locking lever to release the seatback.
   **Note:** Do not hold on to the locking lever when moving the seat.
2. Fold the seatback fully forward.
3. Slide the seat forward.

Returning the Seatback to the Seating Position

**Note:** The memory function is only available on the driver seat.

**Note:** Make sure the seat base has been moved to the correct position before folding the seatback upright.
1. Push the seatback to slide the tilted seat to the end stop (memory position) or desired seating position.
2. Fold the seatback to the upright position.

Adjusting the Lumbar Support

WARNING
Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving. This may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

**WARNING**

Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch. A seat which is not fully engaged in its catch could move when your vehicle is moving. This may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Adjusting the Lumbar Support

Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat
Recline Adjustment

1. Press the unlock buttons down and hold them there.
2. Push the seatback forward.

**Note:** Do not attempt to fold the rear seat cushion forward.

**Note:** Lower the head restraints. See Head Restraints (page 84).

Unfolding the Seatback

**WARNINGS**

- When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the seat belts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.
- Make sure that the seats and the seatbacks are secure and fully engaged in their catches.

HEATED SEATS

**WARNING**

- People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.
Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so could drain your vehicle battery.

Press the required switch once for maximum heating. Two lights will illuminate on the switch. Press the switch again for a lower heating level. One light will illuminate on the switch. Press the switch again to turn the heating off completely.

The heated seats will only operate with the ignition switched on.

The heated seat will remain on until either the heated seat switch or the ignition is switched off.
12 Volt DC Power Point

**WARNING**

!” Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 20 amps.

After you switch the ignition off the power supply will only work for a maximum of 30 minutes.

**Note:** Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.

**Note:** Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watt or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.

**Note:** Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when your vehicle is parked for extended periods.

**Location**

Power points may be found:

- on the centre console
- on the rear of the centre console.

**CIGAR LIGHTER**

**Note:** Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

**Note:** If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may lose charge.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 20 amps.

**Note:** After you switch the ignition off the power supply will only work for a maximum of 30 minutes.

**Note:** Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.
CUP HOLDERS

**WARNING**

⚠️ Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.

BOTTLE HOLDER

![Bottle Holder Image]
Starting and Stopping the Engine

GENERAL INFORMATION

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometres) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

WARNINGS

- Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.
- Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.
- Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.
- If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorised dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH

- **0 (off)** - The ignition is off.
  
  **Note:** When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.

- **I (accessory)** - Allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.
  
  **Note:** Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid your vehicle battery losing charge.

- **II (on)** - All electrical circuits operational. Warning lamps and indicators are illuminated.

- **III (start)** - Cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

KEYLESS STARTING

WARNINGS

- The system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as mobile phones.
  
  Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle.

**Note:** The ignition will automatically switch off when you leave your vehicle unattended. This is to prevent your vehicle battery running out of charge.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

**Ignition On**

Press the button once. It is located on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators will illuminate.

**Starting With Manual Transmission**

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Briefly press the button.

**Starting With Automatic Transmission**

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Briefly press the button.

**Starting a Diesel Engine**

**Note:** Engine cranking will not commence until the engine glow plug indicator has extinguished. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

**Failure to Start**

**All Vehicles**

The system will not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following.

1. Hold the key next to the steering column exactly as shown.
2. With the key in this position you can use the button to switch the ignition on and start your engine.

**Manual Transmission**

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on. A message will be shown in the display.

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the button is pressed:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Press the button until the engine starts.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits warning lamps and indicators will be switched off.

**Manual Transmission**
Press the button.

**Automatic Transmission**
1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
2. Press the button.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

**WARNING**

Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. With the ignition switched off some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be off.

1. Press and hold the button for at least one second or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to position N and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to position P or N and switch the ignition off.

**STEERING WHEEL LOCK**

**WARNING**

Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

Vehicles Without Keyless Starting

To lock the steering wheel:
1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Rotate the steering wheel slightly to engage the lock.

**Vehicles With Keyless Starting**

**Note:** The steering wheel lock will not engage when the ignition is on or your vehicle is moving.

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock. This operates automatically.

The steering wheel lock will engage after a short period of time once you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside of your vehicle.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

**Vehicles With Automatic Transmission**
Switch the ignition on or press the brake pedal.

**Vehicles With Manual Transmission**
Switch the ignition on or press the clutch pedal.

**STARTING A PETROL ENGINE**

**Note:** You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time, for example 10 seconds. The number of start attempts is limited to approximately six. If you exceed this limit, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.

**Cold or Hot Engine**

**Vehicles with Manual Transmission**

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.
1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

**Vehicles with Automatic Transmission**

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.
1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
2. Start the engine.

**All Vehicles**

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -13°F (-25°C), press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

**Flooded Engine**

**Vehicles with Manual Transmission**
1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

**Vehicles with Automatic Transmission**
1. Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

**All Vehicles**

If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.

**Engine Idle Speed after Starting**

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimised to minimise vehicle emissions and maximise cabin comfort and fuel economy.

The idle speed will vary depending on certain factors. These include vehicle component and ambient temperatures as well as electrical and climate system demands.

**Failure to Start**

**Vehicles with Manual Transmission**

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.
1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

**STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE**

**Cold or Hot Engine**

**All Vehicles**

**Note:** When the temperature is below 5°F (-15°C), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.

**Note:** You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time.

**Note:** After a limited number of attempts to start your engine, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.

Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

**Vehicles With Manual Transmission**

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

**Vehicles With Automatic Transmission**

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

**Failure to Start**

**Vehicles With Manual Transmission**

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position III.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position III until the engine has started.

**DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER**

The filter forms part of the emissions reduction system on your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

**Regeneration**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Avoid running out of fuel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odour and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

**Note:** After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.

A normal filter requires periodic replacement. The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function. Your vehicle will carry out this process automatically.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favourable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or motorway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Vehicles With a Turbocharger

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.
START-STOP

Note: For vehicles with start-stop the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when your vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights. The engine will automatically restart when you press the clutch pedal or when required by a vehicle system, for example to recharge the battery.

To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the transmission selector lever to neutral and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.

Using Start-Stop

WARNINGs

⚠️ The engine may restart automatically if required by the system.

⚠️ Switch the ignition off before opening the bonnet or carrying out any maintenance.

⚠️ Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.

Note: The system only operates when the engine is warm and the outside temperature is between 32°F (0°C) and 86°F (30°C).

Note: If you stall the engine, and then depress the clutch pedal within a short period of time, the system will automatically restart the engine.

Note: The start-stop indicator will illuminate green when the engine shuts down. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 58).

Note: When the start-stop indicator flashes amber, move the transmission selector lever to neutral or depress the clutch pedal.

Note: If the system detects a malfunction, it will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer.

Note: When you switch the system off, the switch will illuminate.

Note: The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on. To switch the system off, press the switch in the instrument panel. The system will only be switched off for the current ignition cycle. To turn it on, press the switch again. For item location: See At a Glance (page 9).

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate.
- Low battery voltage.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The driver's door has been opened.
- Low engine operating temperature.
- Low brake system vacuum.
- If a road speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) has not been exceeded.
- The driver's seat belt has not been fastened.
Unique Driving Characteristics

To Re-Start the Engine

**Note:** The transmission selector lever must be in neutral.

Depress the clutch pedal.
The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:
- Low battery voltage.
- To maintain the interior climate.
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel capless fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel ethanol and petrol may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

When refuelling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refuelling. Fuel vapour is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refuelling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refuelling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as petrol is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a doctor immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapours. Inhaling too much fuel vapour of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapour can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapour causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing petrol vapours, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a doctor immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.
**Fuel and Refuelling**

**FUEL QUALITY - PETROL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not mix petrol with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use leaded petrol or petrol with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded petrol that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

**Long-Term Storage**

Most petrol contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from your dealer.

---

**FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not mix diesel with oil, petrol or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not add kerosene, paraffin or petrol to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

**Long-Term Storage**

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from your dealer.

---

**RUNNING OUT OF FUEL**

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refuelling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. With keyless ignition, just start the engine. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (4.6 litres) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep slope, more than 1 gallon (4.6 litres) may be required.
Refilling With a Portable Fuel Container

**WARNINGS**

Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the capless fuel system. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, which could result in serious personal injury.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels; they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it. The included funnel has been specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.

When filling your vehicle's fuel tank from a portable fuel container, use the funnel included with your vehicle.

1. Locate the plastic funnel in the glove box.
2. Slowly insert the funnel into the capless fuel system.
3. Fill your vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.
4. When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. Extra funnels can be purchased from your authorised dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

**CATALYTIC CONVERTER**

**WARNING**

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

**Driving with a Catalytic Converter**

**WARNINGS**

Avoid running out of fuel.

Do not crank the engine for long periods.

Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.

Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See Jump-Starting the Vehicle (page 132).

Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

**REFUELLING**

**WARNINGS**

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have the system checked by an authorised dealer immediately.
WARNING

Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel filler flap briefly from a distance not less than 8 inches (200 millimetres).

We recommend that you wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pipe nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Stop refuelling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.

Do not remove the nozzle from its fully inserted position during the entire refuelling process.

Note: Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.

1. Press the flap to open it. Open the flap fully until it engages.

Note: When you insert the correct size fuel nozzle, a spring loaded inhibitor will open. This helps to avoid filling up with the wrong fuel.

2. Insert the fuel nozzle up to and including the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel pipe opening.

3. Hold the nozzle in position B during refuelling. Holding the nozzle in position A may affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.
4. Operate the nozzle within the area shown.

5. Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Note: The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refuelling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.

The CO2 and fuel consumption figures are derived from laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 and subsequent amendments are carried out by all vehicle manufacturers.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle. Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors including: driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted, payload, towing, etc.

The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Filling the Tank

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:
- Switch the ignition off before fuelling. An inaccurate reading results if you leave the engine running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic shut-offs when filling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1000 miles (1600 km) of driving (this is your engine’s running-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2000 - 3000 miles (3200 - 4800 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three to five tank fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.

4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

5. Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles travelled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply litres used by 100, then divide by kilometres travelled).

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or motorway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle’s fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures mean lower fuel economy.

### TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### Fuel Consumption Figures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Urban</th>
<th>Extra-Urban</th>
<th>Combined</th>
<th>CO2 Emissions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>l/100 km (mpg)</td>
<td>l/100 km (mpg)</td>
<td>l/100 km (mpg)</td>
<td>g/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0L EcoBoost with Start-Stop</td>
<td>5.3 (53.3)</td>
<td>3.7 (76.3)</td>
<td>4.3 (65.7)</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0L EcoBoost without Start-Stop</td>
<td>5.9 (47.9)</td>
<td>3.7 (76.3)</td>
<td>4.5 (62.8)</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25L Duratec-16V - Stage V</td>
<td>6.9 (40.9)</td>
<td>4.2 (67.3)</td>
<td>5.2 (54.3)</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>7.6 (37.2)</td>
<td>4.5 (62.8)</td>
<td>5.7 (49.6)</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>8.4 (33.6)</td>
<td>4.5 (62.8)</td>
<td>5.9 (47.9)</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5L Duratorq-TDCi (55kW/75PS)</td>
<td>4.4 (64.2)</td>
<td>3.3 (85.6)</td>
<td>3.7 (76.3)</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (70kW/95PS)</td>
<td>4.4 (64.2)</td>
<td>3.2 (88.3)</td>
<td>3.6 (78.4)</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Selecting Reverse Gear

Do not engage reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.

On some vehicles it is necessary to raise the collar when you select reverse gear.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you move the transmission selector lever to position P. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: The system performs a series of checks when you switch the ignition off. You may hear a slight clicking sound. This is normal.

WARNING

Apply the brakes before moving the transmission selector lever and keep them applied until you are ready to move off.

Press the button on the transmission selector lever to change to each position. The transmission selector lever position will be shown in the information display.

P (Park)

WARNINGS

Move the transmission selector lever to park only when your vehicle is stationary.
Transmission

**WARNINGS**

Apply the parking brake and move the transmission selector lever to park before leaving your vehicle. Make sure that the transmission selector lever is latched in position.

**Note:** An audible warning will sound if you open the driver’s door and you have not moved the transmission selector lever to park.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the transmission selector lever in this position.

**R (Reverse)**

**WARNINGS**

Move the transmission selector lever to reverse only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

Always come to a complete stop before shifting the transmission selector lever out of reverse.

Move the transmission selector lever to reverse to allow your vehicle to move backward.

**N (Neutral)**

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the transmission selector lever in this position.

**D (Drive)**

**Note:** A shift will occur only when your vehicle speed and the engine speed are appropriate.

**Note:** You may temporarily override the current gear selected using the + and - buttons.

Select drive to shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will select the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and your input.

**Sport Mode and Manual Shifting**

**Sport Mode**

**Note:** In sport mode the transmission operates as normal but gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

**Note:** In sport mode S will be shown in the information display.

Switch on sport mode by moving the transmission selector lever to position S. Sport mode will remain on until either you shift manually up or down the gears using + and - or move the transmission selector lever to position D.

**Manual Shifting**

**WARNINGS**

Do not hold the buttons permanently in - or +.

The transmission will automatically downshift when the engine speed is too low.

Press the - button to shift down and press the + button to shift up.

Gears may be skipped by pressing the buttons repeatedly at short intervals.

Manual mode also provides a kickdown function. See Kickdown.
Hints on Driving With an Automatic Transmission

**WARNING**

⚠️ Do not idle the engine for long periods of time in drive with the brakes applied.

**Moving Off**

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

**Stopping**

1. Release the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Move the transmission selector lever to **N** or **P**.

**Kickdown**

Press the accelerator pedal fully with the transmission selector lever in the drive position to select the next lowest gear for optimum performance. Release the accelerator pedal when you no longer require kickdown.

**If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow**

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tyres may occur, or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

---

**Emergency Park Position Release Lever**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

⚠️ If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working correctly. See an authorised dealer.

Use the lever to move the transmission selector lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle battery has no charge.

**Emergency Park Position Release Lever**

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off before performing this procedure.
2. Remove the retaining screw.
3. Remove the centre console side panel.
The lever is pink.

4. Apply the brake pedal. Using a suitable tool rotate the lever forward while pulling the transmission selector lever out of the park position and into the neutral position.

Note: See an authorised dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

⚠️ The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and move the transmission selector lever into position P (Park).

⚠️ You must remain in your vehicle once you have activated the system.

⚠️ During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

⚠️ If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected, the system will be deactivated.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, (for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space).

The system will activate automatically on any slope which can result in significant vehicle rollback.

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.

2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will be activated automatically.

3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.

4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: The system can only be switched on and off for manual transmissions.

Note: Once you have switched off the system, it will remain off until you switch it on again.
Transmission

Your vehicle comes with the system already enabled. If desired, you can disable the feature: See General Information (page 62).
GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

⚠️ The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorised dealer.

Note: Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See Cleaning the Alloy Wheels (page 169).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Emergency Brake Assist

Emergency brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The ABS will not eliminate the risks when:

• you drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you
• your vehicle is aquaplaning
• you take corners too fast
• the road surface is poor.

PARKING BRAKE

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

WARNING

⚠️ Always set the parking brake fully and leave your vehicle with the transmission selector lever in position P.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel away from the kerb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel toward the kerb.

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the kerb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the kerb.
**All Vehicles**

**Note:** Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.

To apply the parking brake:
1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:
1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.
**STABILITY CONTROL**

**PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION**

**Electronic Stability Program**

---

**WARNING**

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

---

**Stability Control Warning Lamp**

While driving, it flashes when the system is operating. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 58).

**USING STABILITY CONTROL**

**Note:** The system automatically switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See General Information (page 62).

---

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. This is performed by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as needed.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

⚠️ The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

⚠️ If your vehicle has a trailer tow module not approved by us, the system may not correctly detect obstacles.

⚠️ The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

⚠️ The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.

⚠️ The system does not detect obstacles moving away from your vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move toward your vehicle.

⚠️ Take particular care when reversing with a tow ball arm or rear fitted accessories e.g. a bicycle carrier, as the rear parking aid will only indicate the distance from the bumper to the obstacle.

⚠️ If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 8 inches (20 centimetres).

Note: If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is switched off automatically when any trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket via a trailer tow module we have approved.

Note: Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.

Note: The system may emit false tones if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully laden.

Note: The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensor and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the tone will switch off. As you continue, the inner sensors will detect rearward objects.

PARKING AID

WARNINGS

⚠️ To help avoid personal injury, read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at parking speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system. This may include reduced performance or a false activation.

⚠️ To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when moving in reverse and when using the sensing system.

⚠️ This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

⚠️ Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false audible warnings.

Note: Keep the sensors located on the bumper or fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system’s accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.
Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.

The system warns you of obstacles within a certain range of the bumper area.

When receiving a detection warning, the radio volume is reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio volume returns to the previous level.

Rear Sensing System

The rear sensors are only active when you move the transmission selector lever to position R (reverse). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is fewer than 12 inches (30 centimetres) away, the audible warning sounds continuously. If a stationary or receding object is detected farther than 12 inches (30 centimetres) from the side of your vehicle, the audible warning sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the audible warning sounds again.

The system detects certain objects when you move the transmission selector lever to position R (reverse):

- and your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less
- but your vehicle is not moving, and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less
- and your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Move the transmission selector lever from position R (reverse) to turn the system off. If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on.

Front and Rear Sensing System

The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on. It becomes active when you press the parking aid button or move the transmission selector lever into position R or reverse gear and your vehicle speed is below 7 mph (12 km/h).

Coverage area of up to 72 inches (183 centimetres) from the rear bumper (with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper).
Coverage area of up to 31 inches (80 centimetres) from the front of your vehicle, up to 72 inches (183 centimetres) from the rear bumper and about 6–14 inches (15–35 centimetres) to the side of the front end of your vehicle.

The system sounds an audible warning when obstacles are near either bumper in the following manner:

- Objects detected by the front sensors are indicated by a high-pitched tone from the front speakers.
- Objects detected by the rear sensors are indicated by a lower pitched tone from the rear speakers. As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases.
- The sensing system reports the obstacle which is closest to the front or rear of your vehicle. For example, if an obstacle is 24 inches (60 centimetres) from the front of your vehicle and at the same time, an obstacle is only 16 inches (40 centimetres) from the rear of your vehicle, the lower pitched tone sounds.
- An alternating audible warning sounds from the front and rear if there are objects at both bumpers that are closer than 12 inches (30 centimetres).
- If a stationary or receding object is detected further than 12 inches (30 centimetres) from the side of your vehicle, the audible warning sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the audible warning sounds again.

For specific information on the reverse sensing portion of the system, refer to that section.

Press the button to switch the system off. Press the button or move the transmission selector lever to position R (reverse) to turn the system on again. For item location: See At a Glance (page 9).

**REAR VIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.

⚠️ The distances shown in the display may differ from the actual distance.

⚠️ Do not place objects in front of the camera.

The camera is located on the liftgate near the handle.
Switching the Rear View Camera On

**WARNING**

The camera may not detect objects that are close to your vehicle.

Switch the ignition and the audio unit on. Press the parking aid switch in the instrument panel or move the transmission selector lever to position R (reverse). The image is displayed on the screen. The lamp in the switch illuminates when the system is switched on.

The camera may not operate correctly in the following conditions:
- Dark areas.
- Intense light.
- If the ambient temperature increases or decreases rapidly.
- If the camera is wet, for example in rain or high humidity.
- If the camera's view is obstructed, for example by mud.

**Using the Display**

**WARNINGS**

Obstacles above the camera position will not be shown. Inspect the area behind your vehicle if necessary.

Marks are for general guidance only, and are calculated for vehicles in maximum load conditions on an even road surface.

The lines show the distance from the outer edge of the front tyre plus two inches (51 millimetres) and the rear bumper.
Parking Aids

A Red - up to 12 inches (0.3 metre)
B Amber - 12 - 24 inches (0.3 - 0.6 metre)
C Green - 24 - 35 inches (0.6 - 0.9 metre)
D Black - centre line of the projected vehicle path

Note: The green line is extended from 35 inches (0.9 metre) up to a distance of 126 inches (3.2 metres).

Note: When reversing with a trailer, the lines on the screen are not shown. The camera will show your vehicle direction and not the trailer.

Switching the Rear View Camera Off

Note: The system will automatically switch off once your vehicle speed has reached approximately 7 mph (12 km/h).

Press function button 4. For item location: See Audio System (page 187).

Vehicles with Parking Aid

The display will additionally show a coloured distance bar. This guide indicates the distance from the rear bumper to the detected obstacle.

These are colour coded as follows:
• Green - 24 - 71 inches (0.6 to 1.8 metres).
• Amber - 12 - 24 inches (0.3 to 0.6 metre).
• Red - 12 inches (0.3 metre) or less.
Cruise Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Cruise control allows you to control your speed using the switches on the steering wheel. You can use cruise control when you exceed approximately 20 mph (30 km/h).

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on winding roads or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Change down a gear to assist the system in maintaining the set speed. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

Note: Cruise control will disengage if your vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed while driving uphill.

The cruise controls are located on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release ON.

The indicator will display in the instrument cluster.

Setting a Speed

1. Accelerate to the desired speed.
2. Press and release SET+.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Changing the Set Speed

• Press and hold SET+ or SET-. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
• Press and release SET+ or SET-. The set speed will change in approximately 1 mph (2 km/h) increments.
• Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release SET+.

 Cancelling the Set Speed

Press and release CAN, or tap the brake pedal. The set speed will not be erased.
Cruise Control

Resuming the Set Speed
Press and release **RES**.

Switching Cruise Control Off

**Note:** You will erase the set speed if you switch the system off.
Press and release **OFF** or switch the ignition off.
ACTIVE CITY STOP

General Information

WARNINGS

⚠️ The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

⚠️ At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.

⚠️ Never look directly into the sensor with any type of object. There is a risk of eye injury.

⚠️ If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.

⚠️ To achieve full system performance, you must bed the braking system in. See Running-In (page 130).

⚠️ The system performance may vary depending on your vehicle and road conditions.

⚠️ The system will not react to vehicles driving in a different direction.

⚠️ The system will not react to bicycles, motorcycles, people or animals.

⚠️ When the ignition is on the sensor will constantly transmit a laser beam.

⚠️ The system will not operate during harsh acceleration and steering.

⚠️ In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and ice can all influence the sensor.

⚠️ Do not carry out windscreen repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

If you install a windscreen not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

If the engine stops after the system has been switched on, the hazard warning flashers will turn on.

The system may not function when driving around sharp bends.

Note: Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects, snow or ice.

Note: Keep the bonnet free of ice and snow, otherwise the system may not function correctly.

A sensor is mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to decide when to intervene.

The system is designed to help you reduce low speed collisions into the rear of another vehicle. It will also help you reduce the impact damage or potentially avoid the collision completely.

The system operates at speeds below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h) by applying the brakes when the sensor detects that a collision is likely.

You must depress the brake pedal to obtain full braking force.

When the system is braking or has automatically applied the brakes, a message will be shown in the information display.

Using Active City Stop

Switching the System Off and On

Note: The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.
In certain situations it is advisable to disable the system, for example:
- Driving off road when objects may cover the windscreen.
- Driving through a car wash facility.

You can switch the system off and on using the information display. See General Information (page 62).

**Active City Stop Relearning Procedure**

**Note:** When you disconnect the battery, the system will go through a relearning procedure. During this time the system will not be available.

You must drive your vehicle above 31mph (50 km/h) in a straight line for the procedure to complete. This procedure may take several minutes.

### Laser Sensor Information

**WARNINGS**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Max average power</td>
<td>45mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse duration</td>
<td>33ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wavelength</td>
<td>905nm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.

Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.

Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.

Do not drive with the tailgate or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.

Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See Vehicle Identification Plate (page 183).

Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

Adjustable Load Floor

The load floor can be placed in either position on shelves located at the rear of the luggage compartment trim.

You can hold the load floor open. Use the stoppers located at the side of the luggage compartment to hold the floor up.

LUGGAGE COVERS

WARNING

Do not place objects on the luggage cover.
TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS

⚠️ Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h).

⚠️ The rear tyre pressures must be increased by 3 psi (0.2 bar) above specification. See Technical Specifications (page 179).

⚠️ Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on your vehicle identification plate. See Vehicle Identification Plate (page 183).

⚠️ Do not exceed the maximum permissible nose weight, i.e. vertical weight on the tow ball, of 110 pounds (50 kilogrammes).

⚠️ The electrical system is not suitable for towing trailers with more than one rear fog lamp.

Note: Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. Check with your dealer first.

Place loads as low and central to the axle(s) of the trailer as possible. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, the load in the trailer should be placed toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

In high altitude regions above 3,281 feet (1,000 metres), the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight must be reduced by 10% for every additional 3,281 feet (1,000 metres).

Steep Gradients

WARNING

⚠️ The anti-lock braking system does not control the overrun brake on the trailer.

Change down a gear before you reach a steep downhill gradient.

TOW BALL

WARNINGS

⚠️ When not in use, always transport the tow ball arm securely fastened in the luggage compartment.

⚠️ Take special care when fitting the tow ball arm as the safety of your vehicle and the trailer depends on this.

⚠️ Do not use any tools for mounting or dismounting the tow ball arm.

⚠️ Do not modify the trailer coupling.

⚠️ Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

A 13-pin trailer socket and the tow ball arm seat are provided under the rear bumper. Turn the trailer socket down through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.
Unlocking the Tow Ball Arm Mechanism

1. Remove the protecting cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to unlock.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out and turn it clockwise until it clicks.
   
   **Note:** The red mark on the handwheel must align with the green mark on the tow ball.

4. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is unlocked.

Inserting the Tow Ball Arm

**WARNING**

The tow ball arm may only be inserted when completely unlocked.

1. Insert the tow ball arm vertically and press it upwards until it engages.
   
   **Note:** Do not hold your hand near the handwheel.

   **Note:** The green mark on the handwheel must align with the green mark on the tow ball.

2. Turn the key anti-clockwise and remove the key to lock the tow ball.

3. Pull the protecting cap from the key bow and press it onto the lock.

Driving With a Trailer

**WARNING**

If any of the below conditions cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by an authorised dealer.
Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is correctly locked. Check that:

- the green marks are aligned
- the handwheel (A) is correctly fitted to the tow ball arm
- you have removed the key (B)
- the tow ball arm is securely positioned.

**Removing the Tow Ball Arm**

1. Remove the protecting cap. Press the cap into the key bow. Insert the key and unlock.
2. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out, turn it clockwise against the stop.
3. Remove the tow ball arm.
4. Release the handwheel.

When unlocked in this way, the tow ball arm can be reinserted at any time.

**Driving Without a Trailer**

**WARNING**

Never unlock the tow ball arm with the trailer attached.

Remove the tow ball arm. Insert the plug into its seat (1).

---

**Note:** Unhitch the trailer.

1. Remove the protecting cap. Press the cap into the key bow. Insert the key and unlock.
2. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out, turn it clockwise against the stop.
3. Remove the tow ball arm.
4. Release the handwheel.

When unlocked in this way, the tow ball arm can be reinserted at any time.
Maintenance

WARNING

Remove the tow ball arm and protect the seat with the plug before steam cleaning your vehicle.

Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces, and locking balls with resin-free grease or oil and the lock with graphite.

In case of loss, replacement keys are available from the manufacturer by stating the number on the lock cylinder.

TOWING POINTS

Front Towing Eye

WARNING

The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it anticlockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

Note: Space is provided in the spare wheel well.

Note: You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

Rear Towing Hook

Remove the cover.

Note: If your vehicle has a tow bar, use this to tow other vehicles.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

All Vehicles

WARNINGS

You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.
Towing

WARNINGS

⚠️ The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

⚠️ Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

⚠️ Do not use a rigid tow bar on the front towing eye.

⚠️ When towing your vehicle you must select neutral.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is being towed.

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

WARNINGS

⚠️ If a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h) and a distance of 12 miles (20 kilometres) is to be exceeded the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.

⚠️ It is recommended not to tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move your vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 12 mph (20 km/h) or further than 12 miles (20 kilometres).

⚠️ Do not tow your vehicle backward.

⚠️ In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.

⚠️ Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 32°F (0°C).
RUNNING-IN

Tyres

**WARNING**

New tyres need to be run-in for approximately 300 miles (500 kilometres). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

**WARNING**

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 miles (150 kilometres) in town and for the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometres) on motorways.

Engine

**WARNING**

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometres). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labour the engine.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13°F (-25°C).

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

**WARNINGS**

Drive through water in an emergency only and not as part of normal driving.

**WARNINGS**

Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In an emergency, you can drive your vehicle through water to a maximum depth of 8 inches (200 millimetres) and at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h). You must take extra care when driving through flowing water.

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop your vehicle. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Depress the brake pedal lightly to check that the brakes are functioning correctly.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that your vehicle's lamps are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.

FLOOR MATS
Driving Hints

WARNINGS

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to ensure mats do not shift out of position.

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

WARNINGS

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing loss of control of vehicle.

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.
**HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS**

*Note:* Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the hazard warning flashers may flash if you brake heavily.

For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

**FIRST AID KIT**

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

**WARNING TRIANGLE**

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

**JUMP-STARTING THE VEHICLE**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.

⚠️ Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

⚠️ Always use jumper cables with insulated clamps and adequate size cable.

*Note:* Do not disconnect the battery from your vehicle’s electrical system.

---

**To Connect the Booster Cables**

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C).
4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground connection of vehicle A (cable D).

**WARNINGS**

- Do not connect directly to the negative (-) terminal of the flat battery.
- Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

---

**To Start the Engine**

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

**WARNING**

- Do not switch on the headlamps when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.
Fuses

FUZE BOX LOCATIONS

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

This fuse box is located behind the glove box. Open the glove box and empty the contents. Press the sides inwards and swivel the glove box downward.
## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Fuse rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>40 A</td>
<td>Anti-lock braking system module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Anti-lock braking system, electronic stability program module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>60 A</td>
<td>Cooling system fan high speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>40 A</td>
<td>Cooling system fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Cooling system fan low speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Heater blower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>60 A</td>
<td>Passenger compartment fuse box supply (battery)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Fuse rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Body control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>60 A</td>
<td>Passenger compartment fuse box supply (ignition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>50 A</td>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>60 A</td>
<td>Heated windscreen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Starter relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Main beam left-hand relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Main beam right-hand relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Water pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Ignition coils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Powertrain control module, high and low cooling fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Heated oxygen sensors (petrol engines)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Power supply module (diesel engines)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Air conditioning compressor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Cooling system fan (1.6L Duratorq-TDCi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Front fog lamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Direction indicators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Exterior lighting left-hand side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Exterior lighting right-hand side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Powertrain control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Anti-lock braking system, electronic stability program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Air conditioning clutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Fuse rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Horn, battery saver, keyless vehicle module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Heated rear window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Fuel pump relay, diesel fuel heater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Category one alarm system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>7.5A</td>
<td>Automatic transmission controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>25 A</td>
<td>Front door module left-hand side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>25 A</td>
<td>Front door module right-hand side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>25 A</td>
<td>Rear door module left-hand side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>25 A</td>
<td>Rear door module right-hand side</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relay</th>
<th>Circuits switched</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>Cooling system fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>Heated windscreen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R3</td>
<td>Power control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>Main beam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7</td>
<td>Engine cooling fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8</td>
<td>Starter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R9</td>
<td>Air conditioning clutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R10</td>
<td>Front fog lamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R11</td>
<td>Fuel pump, diesel fuel heater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R12</td>
<td>Reversing lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R13</td>
<td>Heater blower</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fuses

### Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Fuse rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Ignition, autowipers, heated windscreen, dome lamp, interior mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Stop lamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Reversing lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Headlamp levelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Windscreen wipers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse</td>
<td>Fuse rating</td>
<td>Circuits protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Rear window wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Washer pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Passenger heated seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Driver heated seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Airbag module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Ignition, electric power assisted steering, instrument cluster, passive anti-theft system, anti-lock braking system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Powertrain control module, transmission selector lever, fuel pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Audio system, instrument cluster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Data link connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Trailer module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Audio system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Instrument cluster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Multi functional display, clock, internal scanner, heating vents, air conditioning panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>SYNC, Bluetooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Fuse rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Heated windscreen left-hand side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>Heated windscreen right-hand side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>30 A</td>
<td>High quality power supply (vehicles with Start-Stop)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Rear power point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Cigar lighter, front auxiliary power point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Keyless entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>20 A</td>
<td>Keyless entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>15 A</td>
<td>Ignition switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Rear view camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>10 A</td>
<td>Active city stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>7.5 A</td>
<td>Passenger airbag deactivation indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relay</th>
<th>Circuits switched</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>Ignition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>Cigar lighter, front auxiliary power point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R3</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>Active city stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>Keyless entry (accessory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7</td>
<td>Keyless entry (ignition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8</td>
<td>Rear auxiliary power point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R9</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R10</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R11</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R12</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHANGING A FUSE**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Do not modify the electrical system of your vehicle in any way. Have repairs to the electrical system and the replacement of relays and high current fuses carried out by an authorised dealer.

⚠️ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off before attempting to change a fuse.

⚠️ Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

If electrical components in your vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. A break in the fuse wire will indicate a blown fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.
GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorised repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. Authorised repairers are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly, with a wide range of highly specialised tools.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following checks.

WARNINGS

Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.

Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

Daily Checks

• Exterior lamps.
• Interior lamps.
• Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refuelling

• Engine oil level. See Engine Oil Check (page 151).
• Brake fluid level. See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
• Washer fluid level. See Washer Fluid Check (page 152).
• Tyre pressures (when cold). See Technical Specifications (page 179).
• Tyre condition. See Wheels and Tyres (page 170).

Monthly Checks

• Engine coolant level (engine cold). See Engine Coolant Check (page 152).
• Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
• Air conditioning operation.
• Parking brake operation.
• Horn operation.
• Tightness of wheel nuts. See Technical Specifications (page 179).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE BONNET

Opening the Bonnet

1. Pull the bonnet release handle.
2. Move the catch to the left.

3. Open the bonnet and support it with the bonnet strut.

**Closing the Bonnet**

1. Remove the bonnet strut from the catch and secure correctly after use.

2. Lower the bonnet and allow it to drop from under its own weight for the last 8–11 inches (20–30 centimetres).

**Note:** Make sure that you have closed the bonnet correctly.
**UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST**

A  Engine coolant reservoir*: See Engine Coolant Check (page 152).
B  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
C  Engine oil filler cap*: See Engine Oil Check (page 151).
D  Battery: See Changing the 12V Battery (page 153).
E  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
F  Engine compartment fuse box. See Fuses (page 134).
G  Windscreen and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See Washer Fluid Check (page 152).
H  Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
I  Engine oil dipstick*: See Engine Oil Check (page 151).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.
A  Engine coolant reservoir*: See Engine Coolant Check (page 152).
B  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
C  Engine oil filler cap*: See Engine Oil Check (page 151).
D  Battery: See Changing the 12V Battery (page 153).
E  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
F  Engine compartment fuse box. See Fuses (page 134).
G  Windscreen and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See Washer Fluid Check (page 152).
H  Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
I  Engine oil dipstick*: See Engine Oil Check (page 151).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.
A  Engine coolant reservoir*: See Engine Coolant Check (page 152).
B  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
C  Engine oil filler cap*: See Engine Oil Check (page 151).
D  Battery: See Changing the 12V Battery (page 153).
E  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
F  Engine compartment fuse box. See Fuses (page 134).
G  Windscreen and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See Washer Fluid Check (page 152).
H  Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
I  Engine oil dipstick*: See Engine Oil Check (page 151).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.
A  Engine coolant reservoir*: See Engine Coolant Check (page 152).
B  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
C  Engine oil filler cap*: See Engine Oil Check (page 151).
D  Battery: See Changing the 12V Battery (page 153).
E  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
F  Engine compartment fuse box. See Fuses (page 134).
G  Windscreen and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See Washer Fluid Check (page 152).
H  Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
I  Engine oil dipstick*: See Engine Oil Check (page 151).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.
A  Engine coolant reservoir*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 152).
B  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 152).
C  Engine oil filler cap*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 151).
D  Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 153).
E  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 152).
F  Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 134).
G  Windscreen and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 152).
H  Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
I  Engine oil dipstick*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 151).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.
A  Engine coolant reservoir*: See Engine Coolant Check (page 152).
B  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
C  Engine oil filler cap*: See Engine Oil Check (page 151).
D  Battery: See Changing the 12V Battery (page 153).
E  Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 152).
F  Engine compartment fuse box. See Fuses (page 134).
G  Windscreen and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See Washer Fluid Check (page 152).
H  Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
I  Engine oil dipstick*: See Engine Oil Check (page 151).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.
Maintenance

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST

A  Minimum
B  Maximum

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.4L DURATEC-16V (SIGMA)

A  Minimum
B  Maximum

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.25L DURATEC-16V (SIGMA)

A  Minimum
B  Maximum

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DURATEC-16V TI-VCT (SIGMA)

A  Minimum
B  Maximum
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI (67KW/91PS)

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See Technical Specifications (page 165).

**Note:** Check the oil level before starting the engine.

**Note:** Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

**Note:** Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they may damage the engine.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3000 miles (5000 kilometres).

Adding Oil

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.

⚠️ Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.

1. Remove the filler cap.

2. Add oil that meets Ford specifications. See Technical Specifications (page 165).

3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

2. Switch off the engine and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
Maintenance

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

**WARNING**

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

**Note:** Make sure that the level is between the MIN and the MAX marks.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend beyond the MAX mark.

If the level is at the MIN mark, add coolant immediately.

Adding Engine Coolant

**WARNINGS**

- Only add coolant when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.
- Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.
- Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is hot. Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilt on a hot exhaust.

**Note:** In an emergency, you can add just water to the cooling system to reach a vehicle service station. Have the system checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.

**Note:** Prolonged use of incorrect dilution of the coolant can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

**Note:** Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

1. Remove the filler cap. Any pressure will escape slowly as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add a 50/50 mixture of coolant and water using fluid that meets the Ford specifications. See Technical Specifications (page 165).
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

**WARNINGS**

- Use of any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid may reduce brake efficiency and not meet Ford’s performance standards.
- Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.
- If the level is at the MIN mark, have the system checked by an authorised dealer as soon as possible.

**Note:** Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

**Note:** The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

Add fluid that meets the Ford specification. See Technical Specifications (page 165).

WASHER FLUID CHECK

**Note:** The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.
CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNING
For vehicles with start-stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

Note: Where applicable you must reprogram the audio system using the keycode.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See Maintenance (page 142).

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.
Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Windscreen Wiper Blades
Changing the Windscreen Wiper Blades

1. Press the locking button.
2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Install in the reverse order.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Rear Window Wiper Blade

1. Lift the wiper arm.
2. Position the wiper blade at right angles to the wiper arm.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

**REMOVING A HEADLAMP**

1. Open the bonnet. See *Opening and Closing the Bonnet* (page 142).

2. Remove the screws.

3. Disconnect the electrical connector.

4. Remove the headlamp.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you fully engage the headlamp in the retaining clips.

**CHANGING A BULB - 3-DOOR**

**WARNINGS**

- Switch the lamps and the ignition off.
- Let the bulb cool down before removing it.
- Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

**Note:** Only fit bulbs of the correct specification.

**Note:** The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

**Headlamp**

**Note:** Remove the covers to gain access to the bulbs.

---

A Headlamp dipped beam
B Headlamp main beam and daytime running lamp
C Side lamp
D Direction indicator
**Direction Indicator**

1. Remove the headlamp. See *Removing a Headlamp* (page 154).
2. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anticlockwise and remove it.

**Headlamp Main Beam and Daytime Running Lamp**

1. Remove the headlamp. See *Removing a Headlamp* (page 154).
2. Turn the bulb anticlockwise and remove it.

**Note:** *Do not touch the glass of the bulb.*

**Headlamp Dipped Beam**

1. Remove the headlamp. See *Removing a Headlamp* (page 154).
2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

**Note:** *Do not touch the glass of the bulb.*

**Side Lamp**

1. Remove the headlamp. See *Removing a Headlamp* (page 154).
2. Remove the headlamp main beam and daytime running lamp.
3. Remove the bulb holder.
4. Remove the bulb.

**Side Repeater**

1. Press the side of the cover to release the clips.
2. Remove the cover.

3. Remove the bulb and bulb holder.
4. Remove the bulb.

**Front Fog Lamps**

**Note:** You cannot separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.

1. Using a suitable implement, remove the cover.
2. Remove the screws.
3. Remove the lamp.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove it.

**Rear Lamps**

1. Remove the screws.

2. Lift up the luggage compartment seal.

3. Remove the carpet.
4. Remove the wing nut.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove it.
7. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anticlockwise and remove it.

A. Indicator
B. Rear and brake
C. Reverse

**Central High Mounted Brake Lamp**

*Note: The LED board is not a serviceable item, please consult your dealer if this fails.*
**Reading Lamps**

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

**Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell Lamp and Liftgate Lamp**

1. Carefully prise out the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.

**WARNINGS**

- ! Let the bulb cool down before removing it.
- ! Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

**Note:** Only fit bulbs of the correct specification.

**Note:** The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

**Headlamp**

**Note:** Remove the covers to gain access to the bulbs.

**CHANGING A BULB - 5-DOOR**

**WARNINGS**

- ! Switch the lamps and the ignition off.
### Headlamp Main Beam
1. Remove the headlamp. See [Removing a Headlamp](#) (page 154).
2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.
   **Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

### Side Lamp
1. Remove the headlamp. See [Removing a Headlamp](#) (page 154).
2. Remove the headlamp main beam and daytime running lamp.
3. Remove the bulb holder.
4. Remove the bulb.

### Direction Indicator
1. Remove the headlamp. See [Removing a Headlamp](#) (page 154).
2. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove it.
   **Note:** Do not touch the glass of the bulb.
3. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anticlockwise and remove it.

**Side Repeater**

1. Press the side of the cover to release the clips.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Remove the bulb and bulb holder. Remove the bulb.

**Front Fog Lamps**

1. Remove the retaining clips to gain access to the lamp assembly.
2. Using a suitable implement, remove the cover.
3. Remove the screws.
4. Remove the lamp.

**Note:** You cannot separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove it.

**Rear Lamps**

1. Remove the screws.

2. Lift up the luggage compartment seal.

3. Remove the carpet.
4. Remove the wing nut.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove it.
7. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anticlockwise and remove it.

A. Indicator
B. Rear and brake
C. Reverse

**Central High Mounted Brake Lamp**

*Note: The LED board is not a serviceable item, please consult your dealer if this fails.*
Maintenance

Reading Lamps

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell Lamp and Liftgate Lamp

1. Carefully prise out the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lamp</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Power (watt)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front direction indicator</td>
<td>PY21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlamp main beam and daytime running lamp</td>
<td>H15</td>
<td>55/15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlamp dipped beam</td>
<td>H7</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front fog lamp</td>
<td>H11</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side repeater</td>
<td>WY5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear direction indicator</td>
<td>PY21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake and rear lamp</td>
<td>P21/5W</td>
<td>21/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear fog lamp</td>
<td>P21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reversing lamp</td>
<td>W16W</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licence plate lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lamp</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Power (watt)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interior lamp</td>
<td>W6W</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luggage compartment lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** On some vehicles the lamps are LED. These are not serviceable items, please consult your dealer if they fail.

**TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

**Vehicle Fluids**

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your warranty.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Viscosity Grade</th>
<th>Recommended fluid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil - petrol engines only</td>
<td>WSS-M2C948-B</td>
<td>5W-20</td>
<td>Castrol or Ford Engine Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative engine oil - all petrol engines except 1.0L EcoBoost</td>
<td>WSS-M2C913-C</td>
<td>5W-30</td>
<td>Castrol or Ford Engine Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil - diesel engines</td>
<td>WSS-M2C913-C</td>
<td>5W-30</td>
<td>Castrol or Ford Engine Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antifreeze</td>
<td>WSS-M97B44-D</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Motorcraft SuperPlus Antifreeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Motorcraft or Ford DOT 4 LV High Performance Brake Fluid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Your engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit whilst maintaining the durability of your engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-C or WSS-M2C948-B (petrol engines only), you must use SAE 5W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance and reduced fuel economy.

Castrol engine oil recommended.
### Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Capacity in gallons (litres)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Windscreen and rear window washer system</td>
<td>0.6 (2.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Engine cooling system</td>
<td>1.3 (5.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Fuel tank</td>
<td>12.4 (56.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0L EcoBoost</td>
<td>Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter</td>
<td>0.9 (4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0L EcoBoost</td>
<td>Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter</td>
<td>0.9 (4.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter</td>
<td>0.9 (4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter</td>
<td>0.8 (3.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter</td>
<td>0.9 (4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter</td>
<td>0.8 (3.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT</td>
<td>Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter</td>
<td>0.9 (4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT</td>
<td>Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter</td>
<td>0.8 (3.8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Engine Oil Adding Capacities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Capacity in gallons (litres)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.0L EcoBoost</td>
<td>0.2 (0.75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>0.2 (0.75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>0.2 (0.75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT</td>
<td>0.2 (0.75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5L Duratorq-TDCi</td>
<td>0.3 (1.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6L Duratorq-TDCi</td>
<td>0.3 (1.5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Vehicle Care

## Cleaning the Exterior

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windscreen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

### Cleaning the Headlamps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Cleaning the Rear Window

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

### Cleaning the Chrome Trim

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Body Paintwork Preservation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not apply polish to the windscreen or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

## Cleaning the Interior

### Cleaning the Chrome Trim

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Seat Belts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Body Paintwork Preservation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not apply polish to the windscreen or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.
Vehicle Care

WARNINGS

Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seat belt retractor mechanism.

Clean them with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

WARNING

Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

Rear Windows

WARNING

Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

Note: Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorised dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer’s instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

Note: Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.

Note: Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

Note: If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Note: Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

• Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tyre cleaner.
• Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
• Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurised stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer’s instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.
GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tyre pressure data is located in the driver’s door opening.

Check and set the tyre pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tyres are cold.

Note: Check your tyre pressures regularly to optimise fuel economy.

Note: Use only approved wheel and tyre sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

Note: If you change the diameter of the tyres from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorised dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.

Note: If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted at the factory, check the suitability with an authorised dealer.

TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

Your vehicle may not have a spare tyre. Therefore you will have a temporary mobility kit which will only repair one damaged tyre.

The kit is located in the spare wheel well.

General Information

WARNINGS

Depending on the type and extent of tyre damage, some tyres can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tyre pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.

Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tyre, for example when it has been driven under inflated.

WARNINGS

Do not use the kit on run flat tyre.

Do not try to seal damage to the tyre’s sidewall.

The kit seals most tyre punctures [with a diameter of up to ¼ inch (six millimetres)] to temporarily restore mobility.

You must observe the following rules when using the kit:

• Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving manoeuvres, especially if your vehicle is heavily laden or you are towing a trailer.

• The kit will provide you with an emergency temporary repair, enabling you to continue your journey to the next vehicle or tyre dealer, or to drive a maximum distance of 125 miles (200 kilometres).

• Do not exceed a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).

• Keep the kit out of the reach of children.

• Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -40°F (-40°C) and +158°F (+70°C).

Using the Kit

WARNINGS

Compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant.

Never leave the kit unattended while in use.

Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes.

You must only use the kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.
• Park your vehicle at the roadside so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic and so that you are able to use the kit without being in danger.
• Apply the parking brake, even if you have parked on a level road, to make sure that your vehicle will not move.
• Do not attempt to remove foreign objects like nails or screws penetrating the tyre.
• Leave the engine running while the kit is in use, but not if your vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated area (e.g., inside a building). In these circumstances, switch the compressor on with the engine switched off.
• You must replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiry date (see top of bottle).
• Inform all other users of your vehicle that the tyre has been temporarily sealed with the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.

Inflating the Tyre

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Check the sidewall of the tyre prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre.

⚠️ Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is operating.

⚠️ Watch the sidewall of the tyre. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve I. Do not continue driving with this tyre.

⚠️ The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact a Physician.

---

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ If the tyre inflation pressure does not reach 26 psi (1.8 bar) within 10 minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. Do not continue driving with this tyre.
1. Remove the kit from the wrapping.
2. Peel off the label A showing the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) from the sealant bottle and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver’s field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
3. Take the hose H with the pressure relief valve I and the power plug with cable F out of the kit.
4. Connect the hose H with the pressure relief valve I to the sealant bottle B.
5. Engage the sealant bottle B into the bottle holder D.
6. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
7. Screw the sealant bottle hose C firmly onto the valve of the damaged tyre.
8. Make sure that the compressor switch G is in position 0.
9. Insert the power plug F into the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket. See Auxiliary Power Points (page 91). See Cigar Lighter (page 91).
10. Start the engine.
11. Move the compressor switch G to position 1.
12. Inflate the tyre for no longer than 10 minutes to an inflation pressure of minimum 26 psi (1.8 bar) and a maximum of 51 psi (3.5 bar). Move the compressor switch G to position 0 and check the current tyre pressure with pressure gauge E.
   Note: If a tyre pressure of 26 psi (1.8 bar) is not reached do not continue.
13. Remove the power plug F from the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket.
14. Quickly unscrew the hose C from the tyre valve. Fasten the valve cap again.
   Note: Some residual sealant fluid may drip or spray out of hose C while you are disconnecting it. This is normal.
15. Leave the sealant bottle B in the bottle holder D.
16. Make sure the kit is stored safely, but still easily accessible in your vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tyre pressure.
17. Immediately drive approximately two miles (three kilometres) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.

WARNING
If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behaviour or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to stop your vehicle. Recheck the tyre and its pressure. If the tyre pressure is less than 14.7 psi (1 bar) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tyre.
18. Stop your vehicle after driving approximately two miles (three kilometres). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tyre.
19. Attach the kit and read the tyre pressure from the pressure gauge E.

20. Adjust it to the specified pressure. See Technical Specifications (page 179).

21. Once you have inflated the tyre to its correct tyre pressure, move the compressor switch G to position 0, remove the power plug F from the socket, unscrew the hose C and fasten the valve cap.

22. Leave hose C and H connected to the sealant bottle B and store the kit away safely.

23. Go to the nearest tyre specialist to get the damaged tyre replaced. Before the tyre is removed from the rim, inform your tyre dealer that the tyre contains sealant. You must renew the sealant bottle B and hose C as soon as possible once used.

**Note:** Remember that the kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tyre repair after using the kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tyre specialist for advice.

**WARNING**

Before driving, make sure the tyre is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. See Technical Specifications (page 179). You must monitor the tyre pressure until the sealed tyre is replaced.

Empty sealant bottles can be disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remains of sealant to an authorised dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

---

**TYRE CARE**

To make sure the front and rear tyres of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tyres from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals of between 3000 and 6000 miles (5000 and 10000 kilometres).

**WARNING**

Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tyres when you are parking.

If you have to mount a kerb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tyres regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tyre pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

**USING WINTER TYRES**

**WARNING**

When you use winter tyres on your vehicle, you must make sure that you use the correct wheel nuts.
Wheels and Tyres

If winter tyres are used, you must make sure that you use the correct tyre pressures. See Technical Specifications (page 179).

USING SNOW CHAINS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only fit snow chains to specified tyres. See Technical Specifications (page 179).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If your vehicle has wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Only use snow chains of 10 millimetres or smaller.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Note: The anti-lock braking system will continue to operate normally.

Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See Using Stability Control (page 114).

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to regularly check the tyre pressures.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The deflation detection system will alert you if there is a change of air pressure in any tyre. It does this by using the anti-lock braking sensors to detect the rolling circumference of the wheels. When the circumference changes, this indicates low tyre pressure. A warning message is displayed in the information display and the message indicator will illuminate. See Information Messages (page 66).

If a low pressure warning message is displayed in the information display, check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure. See Technical Specifications (page 179).

If this happens frequently, have the cause determined and rectified as soon as possible.

Apart from a too low tyre pressure or a damaged tyre, the following situations can affect the rolling circumference:

- Vehicle load is uneven.
- When using a trailer or travelling up and down an incline.
- Using snow chains.
- Driving on soft surfaces such as snow or mud.
Wheels and Tyres

**Note:** The system will still function correctly, but there may be an increased detection time.

**System Reset**

**Note:** Do not reset the system when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** You should reset the system following any adjustment to the tyre pressures or any changing of tyres.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Using the information display control, navigate to **Menu > Vehicle settings > Deflation detection**.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button until confirmation appears.

**CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL**

**Wheel Nuts**

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel nut key and replacement locking wheel nuts from your dealer using the reference number certificate.

**Vehicles with a Spare Wheel**

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is different to the other road wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

**WARNINGS**

Do not carry out any tyre repairs on a spare wheel.

Do not drive through an automatic car wash.

If you are unsure what type of spare wheel you have do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

Only fit snow chains to specified tyres. See **Technical Specifications** (page 179).

The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a kerb.

**Note:** Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

**Vehicle Jack**

**WARNINGS**

The vehicle jack supplied with your vehicle should only be used when changing a wheel in emergency situations.

Before using the vehicle jack, check that it is not damaged or deformed and that the thread is lubricated and free from foreign matter.

Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and your vehicle.

**Note:** Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a vehicle jack or a wheel brace.

It is recommended to use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tyres.

**Note:** Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1.5 tonnes and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 3.1 inches (80 millimetres).
**Vehicles without a Temporary Mobility Kit**

Your vehicle jack, wheel brace, screw-in towing eye and wheel trim remover are located in the spare wheel well.

**Jacking and Lifting Points**

**WARNING**

Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.

A  Emergency use only
B  Maintenance
Vehicles with Side Skirts

Assembling the Wheel Brace

**WARNING**

The screw-in towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it anticlockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

Insert the screw-in towing eye into the wheel brace.

Removing the Wheel Trim

1. Insert the wheel trim remover.
2. Remove the wheel trim.
Wheels and Tyres

**Note:** Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.

### Removing a Road Wheel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set up a warning triangle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make sure that your vehicle is on firm, level ground with the wheels pointing straight ahead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If your vehicle has a manual transmission, move the selector lever to first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, move the selector lever to position (P).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have the passenger's leave your vehicle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not work underneath your vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.

1. Install the locking wheel nut key.
2. Slacken the wheel nuts.
3. Jack up your vehicle until the tyre is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the wheel nuts and the wheel.

### Installing a Road Wheel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make sure that the arrows on directional tyres point in the direction of rotation when your vehicle is moving forward. If you have to fit a spare wheel with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction, have the tyre refitted in the correct direction by an authorised dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use only approved wheel and tyre sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid. See Technical Specifications (page 179).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**WARNINGS**

⚠ Make sure there is no lubrication (grease or oil) on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

⚠ Do not fit run flat tyres on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Contact an authorised dealer for more details about compatibility.

**WARNINGS**

⚠ Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

⚠ Wheel nuts are subject to change. You must make sure that you use only the specific wheel nuts and wheels supplied for your vehicle. If in doubt please contact your authorised dealer.

**Note:** The wheel nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).

**Note:** Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.

**Note:** Make sure that the cones on the wheel nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the wheel nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking wheel nut key.
4. Partially tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 179).
7. Install the wheel trim using the ball of your hand.

**WARNING**

⚠ Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

---

**TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

**Wheel Nut Torque**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wheel Type</th>
<th>lbf.ft (Nm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>100 lbf.ft (135 Nm)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Wheels and Tyres

### Tyre Pressures (Cold Tyres)

#### Up to 50mph (80km/h)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicle Load</th>
<th>Normal</th>
<th>Full</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tyre Position</td>
<td>Front</td>
<td>Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variant</td>
<td>Tyre Size</td>
<td>psi (bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary spare wheel when it differs from the other fitted wheels</td>
<td>175/65 R14-T</td>
<td>46 psi (3.2 bar)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Up to 100mph (160km/h)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicle Load</th>
<th>Normal</th>
<th>Full</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tyre Position</td>
<td>Front</td>
<td>Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variant</td>
<td>Size</td>
<td>psi (bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All petrol engines with manual transmission</td>
<td>175/65 R14*</td>
<td>30 psi (2.1 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All petrol engines with automatic transmission</td>
<td>175/65 R14*</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All diesel engines</td>
<td>175/65 R14*</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All petrol engines with manual transmission</td>
<td>195/50 R15</td>
<td>30 psi (2.1 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All petrol engines with automatic transmission</td>
<td>195/50 R15</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All diesel engines</td>
<td>195/50 R15</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/55 R15</td>
<td>30 psi (2.1 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All engines except 1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/55 R15</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All engines</td>
<td>195/60 R15</td>
<td>30 psi (2.1 bar)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Wheels and Tyres

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicle Load</th>
<th>Normal</th>
<th>Full</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front</td>
<td>Rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre Position</td>
<td>Size</td>
<td>psi (bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/45 R16</td>
<td>32 psi (2.2 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All petrol engines with automatic transmission</td>
<td>195/45 R16</td>
<td>35 psi (2.4 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All diesel engines</td>
<td>195/45 R16</td>
<td>35 psi (2.4 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0L EcoBoost with manual transmission</td>
<td>195/45 R16</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/50 R16</td>
<td>30 psi (2.1 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All engines except 1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/50 R16</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All petrol engines with manual transmission</td>
<td>205/40 R17</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All petrol engines with automatic transmission</td>
<td>205/40 R17</td>
<td>35 psi (2.4 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All diesel engines</td>
<td>205/40 R17</td>
<td>35 psi (2.4 bar)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Only use snow chains on specified tyres.*
# Wheels and Tyres

## Continuous Speed in Excess of 100mph (160km/h)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicle Load</th>
<th>Normal</th>
<th>Full</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tyre Position</strong></td>
<td><strong>Front</strong></td>
<td><strong>Rear</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variant</td>
<td>Size</td>
<td>psi (bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All petrol engines with manual transmission</td>
<td>175/65 R14</td>
<td>30 psi (2.1 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All petrol engines with automatic transmission</td>
<td>175/65 R14</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All diesel engines</td>
<td>175/65 R14</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All vehicles</td>
<td>195/50 R15</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/55 R15</td>
<td>30 psi (2.1 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All engines except 1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/55 R15</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All engines</td>
<td>195/60 R15</td>
<td>30 psi (2.1 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/45 R16</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All engines except 1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/45 R16</td>
<td>36 psi (2.5 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/50 R16</td>
<td>30 psi (2.1 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All engines except 1.25L Duratec-16V and 1.4L Duratec-16V</td>
<td>195/50 R16</td>
<td>33 psi (2.3 bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All engines</td>
<td>205/40 R17</td>
<td>36 psi (2.5 bar)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE (IF EQUIPPED)

Note: Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

Note: The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependant upon market requirements.

A  Model
B  Variant
C  Engine designation
D  Emission level
E  Vehicle identification number
F  Gross vehicle weight
G  Gross train weight
H  Maximum front axle weight
I  Maximum rear axle weight

Your vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate located on the lock side of the right-hand door aperture at the bottom.
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension description</th>
<th>Dimension in inches (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum length</td>
<td>155.5 - 155.8 (3950 - 3958)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall width including exterior mirrors</td>
<td>77.7 (1973)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall height - EC kerb weight</td>
<td>56.4 - 58.3 (1433 - 1481)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>98.0 (2489)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front track</td>
<td>58 - 58.8 (1473 - 1493)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear track</td>
<td>57.5 - 58.3 (1460 - 1480)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Capacities and Specifications

#### Towing equipment dimensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Dimension description</th>
<th>Dimension in inches (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Bumper – end of tow ball</td>
<td>4.9 (124)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Attachment point – centre of tow ball</td>
<td>0.3 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Wheel center – centre of tow ball</td>
<td>29.9 (761)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball – side member</td>
<td>20.2 (512)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Capacities and Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Dimension description</th>
<th>Dimension in inches (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Distance between side members</td>
<td>40.3 (1024)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball – centre 1. attachment point</td>
<td>12.5 (317)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball – centre 2. attachment point</td>
<td>23 (584)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radio Reception Factors</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Distance/Strength</td>
<td>The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain</td>
<td>Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, motorway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Station overload</td>
<td>When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CD and CD Player Information

**Note:** CD units are designed to play commercially-pressed 4.75 inch (12 centimetre) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.

**Note:** CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Contact an authorised dealer for further information.

**Note:** Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only, wiping from the centre of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognising and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
Audio System

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 or .WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.

- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3 and WMA), only files with the .mp3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 and WMA files are played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the .mp3 or WMA files in the current folder.

**AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD**

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.
**Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.

**Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.

**CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.

**OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.

**INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.

**TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.

**Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favourite station press and hold until the sound returns.

**Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.

**On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

**Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.
Audio System

K **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.

L **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade.

M **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

N **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

O **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

**Sound Button**

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the **SOUND** button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

**Waveband Button**

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press **OK**.

**Station Tuning Control**

**Seek Tuning**

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

**Manual Tuning**

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **RADIO** mode and then **MANUAL TUNE**.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
4. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

**Scan Tuning**

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **RADIO** mode and then **SCAN**.
3. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
4. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

**Station Preset Buttons**

This feature allows you to store your favourite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.

**Autostore Control**

**Note:** This will store up to a maximum of the six strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

- Press and hold the RADIO button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

**Traffic Information Control**

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

**Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off**

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the TA or TRAFFIC button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, TP will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and **Traffic announcement** will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless TA or TRAFFIC is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcement will be heard.

**Note:** When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.

**Traffic Announcement Volume**

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

**Ending Traffic Announcements**

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press TA or TRAFFIC during the announcement.

**Note:** If you press TA or TRAFFIC at any other time it will switch all announcements off.

**Automatic Volume Control**

When available, automatic volume control adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.
1. Press the MENU button and select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
2. Select AVC LEVEL or ADAPTIVE VOL.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the MENU button to return.

News Broadcasts

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to NEWS and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

Alternative Frequencies

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognised by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, AF will be shown in the display.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to ALTERNAT FREQ or ALTERNATIVE FREQ and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

Regional Mode

Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centred on major towns or cities.

When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighbouring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighbouring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to RDS REGIONAL and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/BLUETOOTH

WARNING

⚠️ Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: An integrated multi function display is situated above the unit. This shows important information regarding control of your system. Additionally, there are various icons placed around the display screen which light up when a function is active (for example CD, Radio or Aux.)
**Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.

**Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.

**CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.

**OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.

**INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and IPod information.

**TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.

**Sound:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade.

**Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favourite station press and hold until the sound returns.

**Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
Audio System

J **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

K **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD.

L **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

M **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD.

N **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

O **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

P **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.

Q **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing PHONE then MENU. See separate manual.

R **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

S **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

T **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.
Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. The description for the current function displays in the screen.

**Sound Button**

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the sound button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

**Waveband Button**

Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press **OK**.

**Station Tuning Control**

**DAB Service Linking**

*Note: The system does not automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.*

*Note: Service linking allows cross-referencing to other corresponding frequencies of the same station, for example FM and other DAB ensembles.*

*Note: The system will automatically change to another corresponding station if the current one becomes unavailable, for example when leaving the coverage area.*

Switching DAB service linking on and off. See **General Information** (page 62).

**Seek Tuning**

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

**Manual Tuning**

1. Press **function button 2**.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press **OK** to continue listening to a station.

**Scan Tuning**

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.
Audio System

1. Press **function button 3**.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press **function button 3** again or **OK** to continue listening to a station.

**Station Preset Buttons**

This feature allows you to store your favourite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.

**Autostore Control**

**Note:** This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband, and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

- Press and hold the **RADIO** button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.

**Traffic Information Control**

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

**Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off**

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the **TA** or **TRAFFIC** button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, **TP** will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and **Traffic announcement** will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** or **TRAFFIC** is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcement will be heard.

**Note:** When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.

**Traffic Announcement Volume**

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.
**Audio System**

**Ending Traffic Announcements**

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press TA or TRAFFIC during the announcement.

**Note:** If you press TA or TRAFFIC at any other time it will switch all announcements off.

**Automatic Volume Control**

When available, automatic volume control adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the MENU button and select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
2. Select AVC LEVEL or ADAPTIVE VOL.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the MENU button to return.

**News Broadcasts**

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to NEWS and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

**Alternative Frequencies**

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognised by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, AF will be shown in the display.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to ALTERNAT FREQ. or ALTERNATIVE FREQ. and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

**Regional Mode**

Regional mode controls the behaviour of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this
large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centred on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighbouring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighbouring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause random alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **RDS REGIONAL** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.

4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

**AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH:**
**SONY AM/FM/CD**

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.
**Audio System**

A  **On, Off:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off.

B  **DISPLAY:** Press the button to turn on the display into idle mode.

C  **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favourite station press and hold until the sound returns.

D  **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.

E  **Cursor arrows:** Press the button to scroll through on-screen choices.

F  **Digital signal processing:** Press the button to access the digital signal processing functions.

G  **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.

H  **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and IPod information.

I  **CLOCK:** Press the button to access the clock functions.

J  **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD when in CD mode. In phone mode, use the button to end a phone call. An incoming call can be rejected.
Audio System

K **MUTE:** Press the button to turn the sound off, press again to turn the sound on.

L **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.

M **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

N **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade.

O **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

P **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.

Q **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

R **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.

S **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.

T **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing PHONE then MENU. See separate manual.

U **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

V **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD, When in CD mode. In phone mode use the button to begin a phone call. An incoming phone call can be accepted.

W **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

X **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing.

Y **Volume:** Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

**Sound Button**
This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass, middle and treble).

1. Press the **SOUND** button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

**Waveband Button**
Press the **RADIO** button to select from the wavebands available.
Audio System

You can use the selector to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press OK.

Station Tuning Control

DAB Service Linking

**Note:** The DAB service linking is as per default off.

**Note:** Service linking allows cross-referencing to other corresponding frequencies of the same station, for example FM and other DAB ensembles.

**Note:** The system will automatically change to another corresponding station if the current one becomes unavailable, for example when leaving the coverage area.

Switching DAB service linking on and off. See **General Information** (page 62).

Seek Tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

Manual Tuning

1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

Scan Tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

1. Press function button 3.

2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press function button 3 again or OK to continue listening to a station.

Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favourite stations, they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

You can repeat this on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** When you drive to another part of the country, stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.

Autostore Control

**Note:** This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband, and overwrite the previously stored stations. You can also store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

**Note:** You must select either **FM AST** or **AM AST** to use this function.

- Press the **MENU** button, select audio mode then press and hold the **RADIO** button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the autostore presets.
Traffic Information Control

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

 Turning Traffic Announcements On and Off

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the TA or TRAFFIC button. A TA display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, TP will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and Traffic announcement will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless TA or TRAFFIC is turned off, then on again.

Note: If traffic announcement is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non traffic announcement station no traffic announcement will be heard.

Note: When you are listening to a non traffic announcement station and turn traffic announcement off and on again a TP seek will occur.

Traffic Announcement Volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

• Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming traffic announcement broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

Ending Traffic Announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press TA or TRAFFIC during the announcement.

Note: If you press TA or TRAFFIC at any other time it will switch all announcements off.

Automatic Volume Control

When available, automatic volume control adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the MENU button and select AUDIO.
2. Select AVC LEVEL or ADAPTIVE VOL.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the MENU button to return.

Digital Signal Processing

Digital Signal Processing Occupancy

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in your vehicle to each seat. You must select the correct sitting position for the audio to be correctly set.

Digital Signal Processing Equaliser

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

Changing the Digital Signal Processing Settings

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
Audio System

3. Scroll to the required digital signal processing function.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
5. Press the **OK** button to confirm your selection.
6. Press the **MENU** button to return.

**News Broadcasts**

Your audio unit may interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband, radio data system or other enhanced network linked stations.

The display will indicate there is an incoming announcement, during news broadcasts. When the audio unit interrupts for a news broadcast the preset volume level will be the same as traffic announcements.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **NEWS** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

**Alternative Frequencies**

The majority of programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification code, it can be recognised by audio units.

When your vehicle moves from one transmission area to another with the alternative frequencies tuning switched on, this function will search for the strongest station signal.

Under certain conditions, however, alternative frequencies tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, AF will be shown in the display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **AUDIO** or **AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Scroll to **ALTERNAT FREQ** or **ALTERNATIVE FREQ** and turn on or off with the **OK** button.
4. Press the **MENU** button to return.

**Regional Mode**

Regional mode controls the behaviour of alternative frequencies switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centred on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents random alternative frequency switches when neighbouring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighbouring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause 'random' alternative frequency switches if they are not.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to RDS REGIONAL and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING

Note: Coverage differs from region to region and will influence the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally.

The system allows you to listen to Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) radio stations. The following formats are supported:
• DAB
• DAB+
• DMB-Audio.

Ensembles

Note: When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronises to the other ensemble. The audio mutes during synchronisation.

Stations are grouped within ensembles. Each ensemble can consist of several different stations.

When listening to a station, you can also display the ensemble name if required by pressing function button 2. The station name displays below the ensemble name.

Selecting Radio Band

DAB1 and DAB2 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.
1. Press the RADIO button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select DAB1 or DAB2.

Station Tuning Control

Note: When you reach the first or last station within an ensemble, further tuning will skip to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio will briefly mute.

Press the RADIO button and select DAB1 or DAB2. Both preset banks operate in the same way and can store up to 10 different preset stations.

Seek Tuning

1. Select a station.
2. Press a seek button. The radio will stop at the first station it finds in the direction chosen.

Radio Station List

Note: Only the stations in the current ensemble are shown in the display.

This feature displays all the available stations in a list.
1. Select a station.
2. Press function button 1.
3. Press the up and down arrow buttons to navigate to your required station.
4. Press OK to confirm your selection.

Manual Tuning

1. Select a station.
2. Press function button 2.
3. Press the left and right arrow buttons to tune up or down the waveband in small increments. Press and hold to move through the waveband quickly.
4. Press OK to confirm your selection.

Scan Tuning

This feature allows you to listen to the first few seconds of each station while searching through a waveband.
Audio System

1. Select a station.
2. Press function button 3.
3. Press a seek button to begin the scan.
4. Press function button 3 or OK to continue listening to the currently tuned station.

Station Preset Buttons

Note: Stations stored on preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The audio will mute when this happens.

This feature allows you to store up to 10 favourite stations from any ensemble in each preset bank. They can be recalled by selecting the digital waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

Radio Text

Note: Extra information may not always be available.

You can display extra information such as artist name, news, etc. To turn this on, select a station and press function button 4.

Service Linking

Note: If a digital station has no corresponding FM station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.

Note: When linked to a corresponding FM station, an FM symbol displays below the station name.

If you leave the coverage area of a frequency, this feature allows the system to switch automatically to a corresponding frequency, e.g. from Digital to FM.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display. See General Information (page 62).

AUXILIARY INPUT SOCKET

WARNINGS

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the centre console or the glove box, when your vehicle is in moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.
The auxiliary input jack allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male one-eighth inch (three and one-half millimetre) connectors at each end.

1. Make sure your vehicle, radio and portable music player are turned off and move the transmission selector lever to position P.
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the auxiliary input jack.
3. Switch the radio on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch the portable music player on and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press AUX until LINE or LINE IN appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

**AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio unit display</th>
<th>Rectification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PLEASE CHECK CD</td>
<td>General error message for CD fault conditions, such as cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Make sure the disc is loaded correct way up. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If error persists contact your dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD DRIVE MALFUNCTION</td>
<td>General error message for CD fault conditions such as possible mechanism fault.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD DRIVE HIGH TEMP</td>
<td>Ambient temperature too hot – unit will not work until it has cooled down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- make and receive calls
- access and play music from your media player
- use emergency assistance
- access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands
- stream music from your connected mobile phone
- select pre-defined text messages
- use the advanced voice recognition system
- charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Support

For further support see an authorised dealer. For more information visit the regional Ford website.
Safety Information

**WARNING**

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, collision and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable country and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where they cannot be stepped on or interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorised dealer.

Privacy Information

When a mobile phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile that is linked to that mobile phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phone book, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This will include the history of calls when your mobile phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur. The cell phone profile, media player index and development log will remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See Information Displays (page 62).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where system data can be accessed are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available. See SYNC™ Applications and Services (page 222).

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is around you.

Helpful Hints

Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognising spoken commands.
Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish followed by a single beep. Any command spoken prior to this does not register with the system. Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.

You can interrupt the system at anytime while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can also cancel a voice session at any time by pressing and holding the voice button.

**Initiating a Voice Session**

Press the voice button. A list of available commands will appear in the display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Say</th>
<th>If You Want To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Bluetooth Audio&quot;</td>
<td>Stream audio from your mobile phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Cancel&quot;</td>
<td>Cancel the requested action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Line in&quot;</td>
<td>Access the device connected to the auxiliary input jack.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phone&quot;</td>
<td>Make calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;SYNC&quot;</td>
<td>Return to the main menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
<td>Access the device connected to your USB port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Voice settings&quot;</td>
<td>Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Help&quot;</td>
<td>Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**System Interaction and Feedback**

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and your chosen level of interaction. You can customise the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

**Adjusting the Interaction Level**

Press the voice button. Say "Voice settings" when prompted, then any of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Say</th>
<th>The System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Interaction Mode Advanced&quot;</td>
<td>Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Interaction Mode Standard&quot;</td>
<td>Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The system defaults to the standard interaction mode.
Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request. For example, the system may ask if the command phone is correct.

Press the voice button to change the confirmation prompt setting. Say "Voice settings" when prompted, then any of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Say</th>
<th>The System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Confirmation Prompts Off&quot;</td>
<td>Makes a best guess from the command. You may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Confirmation Prompts On&quot;</td>
<td>Clarifies your voice command with a short question.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The system creates suggestion lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice commands. When turned on, you may be prompted with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

For example, say "one" after the tone to call John Doe at home. Say "two" after the tone to call Johnny Doe on mobile. Say "three" after the tone to call Jane Doe at home.

The same logic applies to media content. For example say, "one" after the tone to play John Doe. Say "two" after the tone to play Johnny Doe. Say "three" after the tone to play Jane Doe.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Say</th>
<th>The System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Media Candidate Lists Off&quot;</td>
<td>Makes a best guess from the media suggestion list. You may still occasionally be asked questions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Media Candidate Lists On&quot;</td>
<td>Clarifies your voice command for media suggestions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phone Candidate Lists Off&quot;</td>
<td>Makes a best guess from the mobile phone suggestion list. You may still occasionally be asked questions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phone Candidate Lists On&quot;</td>
<td>Clarifies your voice command for mobile phone suggestions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Changing the Voice Settings**

You can change the voice settings using the information and entertainment display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **SYNC-Settings**.
3. Select **Voice Settings**.
USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your mobile phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most mobile phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialling a number.
- Redialling.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are mobile phone dependent features. To check your mobile phone's compatibility, refer to your device's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

Pairing a Mobile Phone For the First Time

**Note:** You must switch the ignition and radio on.

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.

Wirelessly pairing your mobile phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your mobile phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device’s manual if necessary.
2. Press the PHONE button. When the audio display indicates that no phones are paired, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your mobile phone to start the pairing process.
4. When prompted on your mobile phone’s display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your mobile phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current mobile phone as the primary mobile phone (the mobile phone the system automatically tries to connect with first when you switch the ignition on), downloading your phonebook, etc.

**Pairing Subsequent Mobile Phones**

**Note:** You must switch the ignition and radio on.

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your mobile phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the PHONE button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth devices.
4. Press the OK button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device to start the pairing process.
7. When prompted on your mobile phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.
The system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current mobile phone as the primary mobile phone, downloading your phonebook, etc.

### Mobile Phone Voice Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;Phone&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Call &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Call &lt;name&gt; at home&quot;(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Call &lt;name&gt; at work&quot;(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Call &lt;name&gt; in office&quot;(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Call &lt;name&gt; on cell&quot;(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Call &lt;name&gt; on other&quot;(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Call history incoming&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Call history missed&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Call history outgoing&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Connections&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Dial&quot;(^1,3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Go to privacy&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Hold&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Join&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Menu&quot;(^2,4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phonebook &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phonebook &lt;name&gt; at home&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phonebook &lt;name&gt; at work&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phonebook &lt;name&gt; in office&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phonebook &lt;name&gt; on cell&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phonebook &lt;name&gt; on other&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Phonebook &lt;name&gt; on other&quot;(^2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
2 These commands are not available until your mobile phone information has completely downloaded using Bluetooth.
3 See Dial table.
4 See Menu table.

### Phonebook Commands

When you ask the system to access a phonebook name, number, etc., the requested information appears in the audio display. Press the voice button and say "call" to call the contact.
### "Dial"

- "112" (one-one-two), etc.
- "700" (seven hundred)
- "800" (eight hundred)
- "900" (nine hundred)
- "Pound", (#)
- "Number <0-9>"
- "Asterisk" (*)
- "Clear" (deletes all entered digits)
- "Delete" (deletes one digit)
- "Plus"
- "Star"

**Note:** To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or any button on the audio unit.

### "Menu"

- "(Phone) connections"
- "(Phone) settings (message) notification off"
- "(Phone) settings (message) notification on"
- "(Phone) settings (set) phone ringer"
- "(Phone) settings (set) ringer 1"
- "(Phone) settings (set) ringer 2"
- "(Phone) settings (set) ringer 3"
- "(Phone) settings (set) ringer off"
- "Phone name"
- "Text message inbox"

Words in parenthesis are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.
Making a Call

1. Press the voice button and when prompted say "call <name>" or "dial" followed by a number.
2. When the system confirms the number, say "dial" again to initiate the call.

To erase the last spoken digit, say "delete" or press the left arrow button on the audio unit. To erase all spoken digits, say "clear" or press and hold the left arrow button on the audio unit.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display and press OK.

Receiving a Call

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the accept call option in the audio display. Press the OK button.
- Reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the reject call option in the audio display. Press the OK button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Mobile Phone Options During an Active Call

During an active call, you have extra menu features which become available such as putting a call on hold, joining calls, etc.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select the option for more.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Select</th>
<th>You Can</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mic. off</td>
<td>Turn your vehicle's microphone off. To turn the microphone on, select the option again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privacy</td>
<td>Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your mobile phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is private.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hold</td>
<td>Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is on hold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial a number</td>
<td>Enter numbers using the audio system numeric keypad, for example numbers for passwords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Join Calls</td>
<td>Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multi-party or conference call. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the option for more.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Accessing Features Through the Mobile Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages as well as access mobile phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as emergency assistance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Select</th>
<th>You Can</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dial a number</strong></td>
<td>Dial a number using the audio system numeric keypad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Redial</strong></td>
<td>Redial the last number called (if available). Press the OK button to select.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Phonebook**    | Access your downloaded phonebook.  
1. Press the OK button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to quickly access an alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the keypad to jump in the list.  
2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.  
3. Press the OK button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.  
4. Press the OK button or dial button to call the selection. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Select</th>
<th>You Can</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call History†</td>
<td>Access any previously dialled, received or missed calls. 1. Press the <strong>OK</strong> button to select. 2. Scroll to select either incoming calls, outgoing calls or missed calls. Press the <strong>OK</strong> button to make your selection. 3. Press the <strong>OK</strong> button or dial button to call the selection. The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your mobile phone connects to the system. You must turn on the auto download feature if your mobile phone supports it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Dial</td>
<td>Select one of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system numeric keypad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text message†</td>
<td>Send, download and delete text messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BT Devices</td>
<td>Access the option for Bluetooth device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on or off, delete).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone settings†</td>
<td>View various settings and features on your mobile phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Assistance</td>
<td>Turn the SYNC emergency assistance feature on or off.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† This is a mobile phone dependent feature.

**Text Messaging**

**Note:** *This is a mobile phone dependent feature.*

The system allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

**Receiving a Text Message**

**Note:** *Your mobile phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

**Note:** *Only one recipient is allowed per text message.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

You have these options:

- Select the listen option to have the system read the message to you.
- Select the view option to open the text message. Select the ignore option or do nothing and the message goes into your text message inbox. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read out to you, to view other messages or to select the more option.
- Press the voice button and say "Read text message".
- Select the more option and use the arrow buttons to scroll through further options. Choose from the following:
  - **Reply to sender**: Press the OK button to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.
  - **Call sender**: Press the OK button to call the sender of the message.
  - **Forward msg**: Press the OK button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.

### Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Select the text messaging option, then press the OK button.

A list of all available text messages appears.

You can choose from the following options:

- **New**: allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
- **View**: allows you to read the full message and in addition provides the option to have the message read out to you by the system. To go to the next message select the more option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.

- **Delete**: allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your mobile phone). The audio display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted.
- **More**: allows you to delete all messages or to manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your mobile phone.

When you select the option to send a text message, a list of pre-defined messages appear in the audio display.

### Sending a Text Message

1. Select the send option when the desired selection is highlighted in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears and press the OK button again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with a pre-defined signature.

**Note**: You can send text messages either by choosing a contact from the phonebook and selecting the text option from the audio display or by replying to a received message in the inbox.

### Accessing Your Mobile Phone Settings

These are mobile phone dependent features. Your mobile phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ringtone, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, then press the OK button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Select</th>
<th>You Can</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Set as master</td>
<td>If this option is checked, the system will use this mobile phone as the master when there is more than one mobile phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all paired mobile phones (not only for the active one) using the Bluetooth devices menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Status</td>
<td>See the mobile phone name, provider name, mobile phone number, signal level and battery level. When done, press the left arrow button to return to the mobile phone status menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set ringtone</td>
<td>Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your mobile phone's).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Press the <strong>OK</strong> button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Press the <strong>OK</strong> button to select.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If your mobile phone supports in-band ringing, your mobile phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the mobile phone ringtone option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text msg notify</td>
<td>Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Press the <strong>OK</strong> button to turn the audible tone on or off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phonebook pref.</td>
<td>Modify the contents of your phonebook, e.g. add, delete, download. Press the <strong>OK</strong> button to select and scroll between:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Add contacts:</strong> Press the <strong>OK</strong> button to add more contacts from your phonebook. Push the desired contacts on your mobile phone. Refer to your device's manual on how to push contacts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Delete:</strong> Press the <strong>OK</strong> button to delete the current phonebook and call history. When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Download now:</strong> Press the <strong>OK</strong> button to select and download your phonebook to the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Auto-download:</strong> Check or uncheck this option to automatically download your phonebook each time your mobile phone connects to the system. Downloading times are mobile phone dependent and quantity dependent. When automatic download is switched on, any changes, additions or deletions saved in the system since your last download are deleted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When automatic download is switched off, your phonebook will not be downloaded when your mobile phone connects to the system. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your paired mobile phone is connected to the system.

### Bluetooth Devices

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth devices. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options. It allows you to add, connect and delete devices and set a mobile phone as primary.

#### Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Scroll until the Bluetooth device option appears, then press the OK button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Select</th>
<th>You Can</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
<td>Pair additional mobile phones to the system. 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process. 2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for <strong>SYNC</strong> on your mobile phone. Refer to your device's manual if necessary. 3. When prompted on your mobile phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. 4. When the option to set the mobile phone as the primary mobile phone appears, select either yes or no. 5. Depending on the functionality of your mobile phone, you may be asked extra questions (for example, if you would like to download your phonebook). Select either yes or no to confirm your response.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Delete a paired mobile phone. Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device. After deleting a mobile phone from the list, the mobile phone can only be connected again by repeating the full pairing process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master</td>
<td>Set a previously paired mobile phone as your primary mobile phone. Select the master option to confirm the primary mobile phone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When You Select | You Can
--- | ---

The system attempts to connect with the primary mobile phone every time you switch the ignition on. When a mobile phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk.

Conn. | Connect a previously paired mobile phone. You can only have one mobile phone connected at a time to use the mobile phone functionality. When another mobile phone is connected, the previous mobile phone will be disconnected from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the mobile phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time. Select this option to connect to the selected previously paired mobile phone.

Discon. | Disconnects the selected mobile phone. Select this option and confirm when asked to. After disconnecting a mobile phone, it can be connected again without repeating the full pairing process.

System Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Select the SYNC settings option, then press the **OK** button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Select</th>
<th>You Can</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth on</td>
<td>Check or uncheck this option to turn the Bluetooth interface of the system on or off. Select this option then press the <strong>OK</strong> button to change the option’s status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set defaults</td>
<td>Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when <strong>Set defaults?</strong> appears in the audio display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master reset</td>
<td>Completely erase all information stored on the system (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Select this option and confirm when <strong>Master reset?</strong> appears in the audio display. The display indicates when complete and the system takes you back to the <strong>SYNC-Settings</strong> menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When You Select</td>
<td>You Can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install on SYNC</td>
<td>Install applications or software updates you have downloaded. Select this option and confirm when <strong>Install on SYNC</strong> appears in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB thumb drive in order to finish an installation successfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System info</td>
<td>Display the system’s version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the OK button to select.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browse USB</td>
<td>Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the OK button and use the up or down arrows to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrows to enter and leave a folder. Media content can be directly selected for playback from this menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency assistance</td>
<td>You can turn the emergency assistance feature on or off. See <strong>SYNC™ Applications and Services</strong> (page 222).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES**

1. Press the **MENU** button to enter the system’s menu.
2. Scroll until **SYNC-Apps** is selected, then press **OK**.

A list of available applications will be shown. Each application might have its own specific settings.

**SYNC Emergency Assistance**

**WARNINGS**

⚠️ Always place your mobile phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the mobile phone which could prevent this feature from working correctly.

⚠️ Unless the feature setting is switched on prior to a collision, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait for the system to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear emergency assistance within five seconds of the collision, the system or mobile phone may be damaged or non functional.

For this feature to work, your mobile phone must have Bluetooth and be compatible with the system.
Before selecting this feature, you must read the emergency assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.

When you turn this feature on or off, that setting will apply for all paired mobile phones. If you have turned this feature off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.

Every mobile phone operates differently. While this feature works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

You can find important information regarding airbag deployment in the Supplementary Restraints System section. See Supplementary Restraints System (page 24).

In the event of a collision which deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialling 112 (the wireless emergency number that works in most European countries) through a paired and connected mobile phone. For more information about the system and emergency assistance visit the regional Ford website.

Setting Emergency Assistance On

1. Press the PHONE button to enter the mobile phone menu.
2. Select the emergency assistance option and press OK.
3. Select the option you require and press OK.

Display Options

If you turn this feature on, a confirmation message will be shown in the display.

If you turn this feature off, a dialog will be shown in the display which allows you to set a voice reminder.

Off with voice reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your mobile phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without voice reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your mobile phone connects.

To make sure that emergency assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the collision and during feature activation and use.
- The feature must be switched on prior to a collision.
- You must have a mobile phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected mobile phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the collision.
- A connected mobile phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

This feature will only work in a European country or region where SYNC emergency assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.
In the Event of a Collision

**Note:** Not every collision will deploy an airbag or trigger the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on emergency assistance). However, if emergency assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected mobile phone is damaged or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired mobile phone. The system will then attempt to dial 112.

Before making a call:

- If the call has not been cancelled and a successful call is made, an introductory message is played first for the emergency operator. This is followed by hands-free communication between your vehicle’s occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If the call is not cancelled the system will attempt to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know that it will attempt to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant icon in the display or by pressing the hang up button on your mobile phone.

During a call:

- Emergency assistance uses your vehicle GPS or mobile network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It will alert the emergency operator of the collision and deliver the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line will open so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** While information is being provided to the emergency operator, the system will play a message letting you know it is sending important information. It will then let you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.

**Note:** During an emergency assistance call, an emergency priority screen will be displayed which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available. These coordinates match the information provided to the emergency operator in the introductory message.

**Note:** The emergency operator may also receive information from the mobile network such as mobile phone number, mobile phone location and mobile phone carrier name independent from SYNC emergency assistance.
Emergency assistance may not work if:

- Your mobile phone or emergency assistance hardware has been damaged in the collision.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- Your mobile phone is thrown from your vehicle during a collision.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your mobile phone.
- You are in a European country or region where the SYNC emergency assistance call cannot be placed. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

**Important Information About the Emergency Assistance Feature**

Emergency assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for latest details.

**Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice**

When you turn emergency assistance on, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a collision involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or collision to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

**USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER**

You can access and play music from your media player through your vehicle’s speaker system using the system’s media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories such as artists, albums, etc.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any media player including: iPod®, Zune™, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

**Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port**

**Note:** If your media player has a power switch, make sure that the device is turned on.

**To Connect Using Voice Commands**

1. Plug the device into your vehicle’s USB port.
2. Press the voice button and when prompted, say "USB".
3. You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands.

**To Connect Using the System Menu**

1. Plug the device into your vehicle’s USB port.
2. Press the **AUX** button until an initialising message appears in the top left corner of the display.
3. Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the **Play** menu.
Press **Browse**. Now you can scroll through the list:

- **Play all.**
- **Playlists.**
- **Songs.**
- **Artists.**
- **Albums.**
- **Genres.**
- **Browse USB.**
- **Reset USB.**
- **Exit.**

### What is Playing?

At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the track being played.

### Media Voice Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say "USB", and then any of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;USB&quot;</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Pause&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Repeat off&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play album &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)(^2)</td>
<td>&quot;Repeat on&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play All&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Search album &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play artist &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)(^2)</td>
<td>&quot;Search artist &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play genre &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)(^2)</td>
<td>&quot;Search genre &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play next folder&quot;(^3)</td>
<td>&quot;Search song &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play next track&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Search track &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play playlist &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)(^2)</td>
<td>&quot;Shuffle off&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play previous folder&quot;(^3)</td>
<td>&quot;Shuffle on&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play previous track&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;Similar music&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play song &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)</td>
<td>&quot;What's playing?&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Play track &lt;name&gt;&quot;(^1)(^2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) <name> is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of any desired group, artist, song, etc.

\(^2\) Voice commands which are not available until indexing is complete.

\(^3\) Voice commands which are only available in folder mode.
Voice Command Guide

"Search genre" or "Play genre"
The system searches all the data from your indexed music and if available, begins to play the chosen type of music. You can only play genres of music which are present in the genre metadata tags that you have on your media player.

"Similar music"
The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.

Search or Play, "Artist", "Track, or "Album"
The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.

The system is also capable of playing music from your mobile phone via Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth audio on use the AUX or Source button or press the voice button and when prompted say "Bluetooth audio", then any of the following:

"Bluetooth Audio"

"Connections"

"Pause"

"Play"

"Play next track"

"Play previous track"

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music (by artist, genre, shuffle, repeat, etc.) and to find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

1. Press AUX to select USB playback and then Options to enter the Media menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Select</th>
<th>You Can</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shuffle playlist and Repeat track</td>
<td>Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once these selections are turned on, they will remain on until turned off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Similar music</td>
<td>You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and will then begin playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, play menu or similar music. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, Play menu browsing and Similar Music. Unknowns are placed into any unpopulated metadata tag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset SYNC USB</td>
<td>Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Accessing Your USB Song Library

This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist, track or even to browse what is on your USB device.

1. Make sure that your device is plugged into your vehicle’s USB port and is turned on.
2. Press AUX to select USB playback and then Browse.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select from:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When You Select</th>
<th>You Can</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Play all</td>
<td>Play all indexed media files from your playing device one at a time in numerical order. Press OK to select. The first track title appears in the display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playlists</td>
<td>Access your playlists (from formats such as . ASX, .M3U, . WPL or .MTP). 1. Press OK to select.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### When You Select | You Can
---|---
2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, then press **OK**. | Songs
Search for and play a specific track which has been indexed.  
1. Press **OK** to select.  
2. Scroll to select the desired track, then press **OK**.  
Artists
Sort all indexed media files by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.  
1. Press **OK** to select.  
2. Scroll to select the desired artist, then press **OK**.  
Albums
Sort all indexed media files by albums.  
1. Press **OK** to select.  
2. Scroll to select the desired albums, then press **OK**.  
Genres
Sort indexed music by genre (category) type.  
1. Press **OK** to select.  
2. Scroll to select the desired genre, then press **OK**.  
Browse USB
Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files which are compatible with SYNC, other files saved are not visible.  
1. Press **OK** to select.  
2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on your flash drive, then press **OK**.  
Reset USB
Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to quickly jump to a certain alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the numeric keypad to jump in the list.

### Bluetooth Devices and System Settings
You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 212).

### SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING
Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.
To check your mobile phone’s compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Possible Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A lot of background noise during a phone call.</td>
<td>The audio control settings on your mobile phone may be affecting SYNC performance.</td>
<td>Refer to your mobile phone's manual regarding audio adjustments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.</td>
<td>Possible mobile phone malfunction.</td>
<td>Try turning your mobile phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again. Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.</td>
<td>This is a mobile phone-dependent feature. Possible mobile phone malfunction.</td>
<td>Check your mobile phone's compatibility. Try turning your mobile phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again. Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add. You must switch your mobile phone on and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The system says &quot;Phonebook downloaded&quot; but my phonebook in SYNC is empty or is missing contacts.</td>
<td>Limitations on your mobile phone's capability.</td>
<td>Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add. If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your mobile phone's memory. Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact. You must switch your mobile phone on and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am having trouble connecting my mobile phone to SYNC.</td>
<td>This is a mobile phone-dependent feature. Possible mobile phone malfunction.</td>
<td>Check your mobile phone's compatibility. Try turning your mobile phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again. Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again. Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your mobile phone. Update your mobile phone's firmware.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Mobile Phone Issues

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Possible Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Text messaging is not working on SYNC.</td>
<td>This is a mobile phone-dependent feature. Possible mobile phone malfunction.</td>
<td>Check your mobile phone's compatibility. Try turning your mobile phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audible text messages do not work on my mobile phone.</td>
<td>This is a mobile phone limitation. This is a mobile phone-dependent feature.</td>
<td>Your mobile phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages. Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if the feature is supported by your mobile phone. Press the PHONE button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press OK. Because each mobile phone is different refer to your mobile phone's manual for the specific mobile phone being paired. In fact, there can be differences between mobile phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## USB and Media Issues

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Possible Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am having trouble connecting my device.</td>
<td>Possible device malfunction.</td>
<td>Try turning the device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again. Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable. Make sure the USB cable is correctly inserted into the device and your vehicle's USB port.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### USB and Media Issues

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Possible Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC does not recognise my device when I start my vehicle.</td>
<td>This is a device limitation.</td>
<td>Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth audio does not stream.</td>
<td>This is a device-dependent feature. The device is not connected.</td>
<td>Make sure the device is connected to SYNC and that you have pressed play on your device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC does not recognise music that is on my device.</td>
<td>Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information. The file may be corrupted. The song may have copyright protection which does not allow it to play.</td>
<td>Make sure that all song details are populated. Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When my iPhone or iPod Touch is connected through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.</td>
<td>This is a device limitation.</td>
<td>From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen. To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC. To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Voice Command Issues

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Possible Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SYNC does not understand what I am saying.</td>
<td>You may be using the wrong voice commands. You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.</td>
<td>Review the mobile phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections. Refer to the audio display during an active voice session, you will find a list of voice commands there. The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windscreen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.</td>
<td>You may be using the wrong voice commands. You may not be saying the name exactly as it is saved. The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.</td>
<td>Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section. Say the song or artist exactly as it is saved. If you say &quot;Play Artist Prince&quot; the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation. Make sure you are saying the complete title such as &quot;California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles&quot;. If the songs are saved in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say &quot;L-O-L-A&quot;. Do not use special characters in the title as the system does not recognise them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.</td>
<td>You may be using the wrong voice commands. You may not be saying the name exactly as it is saved. Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters. Your phonebook contacts may be saved in capital letters.</td>
<td>Review the mobile phone voice commands at the beginning of the mobile phone section. Make sure you are saying the name exactly as it is saved. For example, if a contact is saved as Joe Wilson, say &quot;Call Joe Wilson&quot;. The system works better if you list full names such as &quot;Joe Wilson&quot; rather than &quot;Joe&quot;. Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognise them. If the contacts are saved in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say &quot;Call J-A-K-E&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Voice Command Issues

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Possible Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You can also use the mobile phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See <strong>Using Voice Recognition</strong> (page 209).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognising foreign names stored on my mobile phone.</td>
<td>Foreign names are spoken using the currently selected language for SYNC.</td>
<td>SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your mobile phone. Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press <strong>PHONE</strong> select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.</td>
<td>Foreign names are spoken using the currently selected language for SYNC.</td>
<td>SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice prompts are electronically generated and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.</td>
<td>SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.</td>
<td>SYNC uses a synthetically-generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Voice Command Issues

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Possible Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialling a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, “play artist Madonna”).</td>
<td>My previous bluetooth voice control system allowed me to control the radio, CD, and climate control systems. Why can I not control these systems with SYNC?</td>
<td>The focus of SYNC is to control your mobile devices and the content stored on them. SYNC offers significant capability above and beyond the previous system such as. Dialling a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, “play artist Madonna”).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## General

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Possible Cause</th>
<th>Possible Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display (radio, CD, menu settings, etc.) does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts)</td>
<td>A language not supported by SYNC is currently selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.</td>
<td>SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The four languages in each bundle are selected based upon the most popular languages spoken in the country where your vehicle is sold. If the selected language is not available, SYNC will remain in the current active language. SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialling a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, “play artist Madonna”).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNINGS

⚠️ Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by an authorised dealer.

⚠️ The radio frequency transmitter equipment (e.g. mobile telephones, amateur radio transmitters etc.) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they keep to the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

⚠️ Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.

⚠️ Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

⚠️ Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 inches (10 centimetres) from any electronic modules and airbags.

### Antenna Positions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Band MHz</th>
<th>Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)</th>
<th>Antenna Positions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 – 30</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 – 54</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68 – 87.5</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency Band MHz</td>
<td>Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)</td>
<td>Antenna Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142 – 176</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>380 – 512</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>806 – 940</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200 – 1400</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1710 – 1885</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1885 – 2025</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:
- with the ignition ON
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

**END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT**

**SYNC® End User Licence Agreement (EULA)**

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licenced by FORD MOTOR COMPANY from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licenced, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licenced, not sold. All rights reserved.
• The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licenced, not sold. All rights reserved.

• The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENCE: This EULA grants you the following licence:

• You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

• **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.

• **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.

• **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.

• **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licenced to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
SOFTWARE Transfer: You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

Termination: Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.

Security Updates/Digital Rights Management: Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, including copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licences for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licences. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

Consent to Use of Data: You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

Internet-Based Services Components: The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.

Additional Software/Services: The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates,
supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:**
  You recognise your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

**UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**
If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labelled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.
INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:
All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licenced, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:
You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/.

TRADEMARKS:
This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT:
Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

No Liability for Certain Damages:
EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. $250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.
End User Notice

Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information

This system Ford SYNC™ contains software that is licenced to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a licence agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorised use of the software from this system in violation of the licence agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

Read and follow instructions: Before using your Windows Automotive-based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

Keep User's Guide in vehicle: When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

WARNING

Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

General Operation

Voice Command Control: Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen: Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

Volume Setting: Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
Use of Speech Recognition Functions:
Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

Navigation Features: Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Distraction Hazard: Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Let Your Judgment Prevail: Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

Route Safety: Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

Potential Map Inaccuracy: Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

Emergency Services: Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

TeleNav Software End User Licence Agreement
Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software.

TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use
You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver,
places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorised, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software Licence

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable licence (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software licence), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This licence shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 Licence Limitations

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; (c) remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav’s or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or (e) use the TeleNav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libellous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorised access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.
4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV’S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the
Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1
This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2
Except for the limited licences expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licences or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licences explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3
By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4
TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.
8.5
If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6
The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions
The TeleNav Software utilizes map and other data licenced to TeleNav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the TeleNav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to TeleNav’s third party vendor licensors:

NavTeq End User Licence Agreement

END USER TERMS
The content provided ("Data") is licenced, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact NT, please visit www.navteq.com.

The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User Licence Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen’s Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

NT holds a nonexclusive licence from the United States Postal Service ® to publish and sell ZIP+4 ® information.

© United States Postal Service ® 2009. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service ® The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain Data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Licence Limitations on Use: You agree that your licence to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, non-commercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise
reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**Licence Limitations on Transfer:** Your limited licence does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User Licence Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CD-ROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

**Additional Licence Limitations:** Except where you have been specifically licenced to do so by NT in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your licence is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**WARNING**

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty:** This Data is provided to you "as is", and you agree to use it at your own risk. NT and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS

248
OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NT OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control: You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licences and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit NT from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NT (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Severability: You and NT agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

Governing Law: The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the personal jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users: If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial term" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licenced in accordance with this End User Licence Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use", and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)
NAME:
NAVTEQ
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)
ADDRESS:
425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.
Appendices

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User Licence Agreement under which this Data was provided. © 2011 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify NAVTEQ prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Wi-Fi hotspot data provided by JiWire, © 2013 JiWire.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under licence from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User Licence Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote’s providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licences to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licences terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote
become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENCED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.


FCC ID: KMHSYNCG2
IC: 1422A-SYNCG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
Index

A

A/C
See: Climate Control.................................77
About This Manual........................................5
Protecting the Environment.........................5
ABS
See: Brakes..............................................112
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock
Brakes...................................................112
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts
Recommendation.......................................7
Active City Stop.......................................122
General Information.................................122
Laser Sensor Information..........................123
Using Active City Stop.........................122
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.................42
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control.........................77
Air Vents...........................................77
Centre Air Vents..................................77
Side Air Vent......................................77
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm..............................39
Anti-Theft Alarm......................................39
Alarm System.........................................39
Arming the Alarm....................................40
Disarming the Alarm..............................41
Full and Reduced Guard.........................40
Triggering the Alarm..............................40
Appendices...........................................236
At a Glance.............................................9
Front Exterior Overview.............................9
Instrument Panel Overview.......................11
Rear Exterior Overview.............................14
Vehicle Interior Overview..........................10
Audible Warnings and Indicators...........61
Automatic Transmission.......................61
Headlamps On.......................................61
Key Outside Car....................................61
Low Fuel.............................................61
Seat Belt Minder..................................61
Audio Control.........................................42
..................................................42
Audio System........................................187
General Information................................187
Audio Troubleshooting.........................207
Audio unit - Vehicles With:
AM/FM/CD/Bluetooth.........................193
Alternative Frequencies.......................198
Automatic Volume Control...................198
Autostore Control...............................197
News Broadcasts..................................198
Regional Mode.....................................198
Sound Button......................................196
Station Preset Buttons.........................197
Station Tuning Control.........................196
Traffic Information Control...............197
Waveband Button...............................196
Audio unit - Vehicles With: Sony
AM/FM/CD........................................199
Alternative Frequencies.......................204
Automatic Volume Control................203
Autostore Control...............................202
Digital Signal Processing.....................203
News Broadcasts................................204
Regional Mode.....................................204
Sound Button......................................201
Station Preset Buttons.........................202
Station Tuning Control.........................202
Traffic Information Control...............203
Waveband Button...............................201
Autolamps...........................................48
Automatic Climate Control..................79
Temperature Control............................80
Automatic Transmission....................107
Emergency Park Position Release
Lever................................................109
Hints on Driving With an Automatic
Transmission........................................109
Selector Lever Positions.......................107
Sport Mode and Manual Shifting............108
Index

Autowipers...............................................44
Auxiliary Input Socket..............................206
Auxiliary Power Points.............................91
12 Volt DC Power Point.............................91
Location..................................................91

B

Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Bonnet........142
Bottle Holder............................................92
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check....................152
Brakes.....................................................112
General Information.................................112
Bulb Specification Chart..........................164

C

Capacities and Specifications....................183
Technical Specifications..........................184
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior.......................168
Catalytic Converter.................................103
Driving with a Catalytic Converter.............103
Changing a Bulb - 3-Door.........................154
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp.............158
Front Fog Lamps.......................................156
Headlamp................................................154
Interior Lamp.........................................158
Licence Plate Lamp.................................158
Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell
   Lamp and Liftgate Lamp.........................159
Reading Lamps.........................................159
Rear Lamps............................................157
Side Lamp.............................................155
Side Repeater........................................156
Changing a Bulb - 5-Door.........................159
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp.............163
Front Fog Lamps.....................................161
Headlamp..............................................159
Interior Lamp........................................163
Licence Plate Lamp.................................163
Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell
   Lamp and Liftgate Lamp.........................164
Reading Lamps........................................164
Rear Lamps............................................162
Side Repeater........................................161
Changing a Fuse......................................141
Changing a Road Wheel............................175
Assembling the Wheel Brace.....................177
Installing a Road Wheel............................178
Jacking and Lifting Points......................176
Removing a Road Wheel............................178
Removing the Wheel Trim.........................177
Vehicle Jack..........................................175
Vehicles with a Spare Wheel.....................175
Wheel Nuts.............................................175
Changing the 12V Battery.........................153
Changing the Wiper Blades......................153
Rear Window Wiper Blade.........................153
Windscreen Wiper Blades.........................153
Checking MyKey System Status..................32
Checking the Wiper Blades.......................153
Child Safety.........................................15
Child Safety Locks..................................21
Left-Hand Side.......................................21
Right-Hand Side......................................21
Child Seat Positioning.............................18
Cigar Lighter.........................................91
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.......................169
Cleaning the Exterior...............................168
Body Paintwork Preservation.....................168
Cleaning the Chrome Trim.......................168
Cleaning the Headlamps............................168
Cleaning the Rear Window.......................168
Cleaning the Interior...............................168
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens
   and Radio Screens...............................169
Rear Windows.......................................169
Seat Belts............................................168
Clearing All MyKeys...............................32
Climate Control.....................................77
   Principle of Operation............................77
Clock....................................................65
   Type 1..................................................65
   Type 2..................................................65
Cold Weather Precautions.......................130
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check.......................152
Creating a MyKey.................................31
   Programming and Changing Optional
      Settings........................................31
Cruise Control.......................................43
   Principle of Operation...........................120
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control.......................120
## Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cup Holders</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Recording</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daytime Running Lamps</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diesel Particulate Filter</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regeneration</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Audio Broadcasting</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction Indicators</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPF</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Diesel Particulate Filter</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver Airbag</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving Aids</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving Hints</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving Through Water</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRL</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Daytime Running Lamps</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electromagnetic compatibility</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End User Licence Agreement</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC® End User Licence Agreement (EULA)</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Coolant Check</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Engine Coolant</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Immobiliser</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Passive Anti-Theft System</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil Check</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Oil</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.25L Duratec-16V (Sigma)</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.4L Duratec-16V (Sigma)</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi (67kW/91PS)</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma)</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Data Recording</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Data Recording</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Mirrors</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electric Folding Mirrors</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Exterior Mirrors</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastening the Seat Belts</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Seat Belts During Pregnancy</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Aid Kit</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat Tyre Inflation</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Temporary Mobility Kit</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fog Lamps - Front</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Front Fog Lamps</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fog Lamps - Rear</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Rear Fog Lamps</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel and Refuelling</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical Specifications</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Consumption</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calculating Fuel Economy</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filling the Tank</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Consumption</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Technical Specifications</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Quality - Diesel</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-Term Storage</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Quality - Petrol</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-Term Storage</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse Box Locations</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Compartment Fuse Box</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger Compartment Fuse Box</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse Specification Chart</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Compartment Fuse Box</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger Compartment Fuse Box</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauges</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Gauge</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gearbox</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Transmission</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Information on Radio Frequencies</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Global Opening and Closing..................................................55
Global Closing........................................................................55
Global Opening.......................................................................55

H

Handbrake
  See: Parking Brake..........................................................112
Hazard Warning Flashers......................................................132
Headlamp Exit Delay................................................................48
Headlamp Levelling..................................................................49
  Recommended Headlamp Levelling Switch Positions..................50
Head Restraints.......................................................................84
  Adjusting the Head Restraints..............................................84
  Removing the Head Restraints..............................................85
Heated Seats...........................................................................89
Heated Windows and Mirrors..................................................83
  Heated Exterior Mirrors.......................................................83
Heating
  See: Climate Control..........................................................77
Hill Start Assist
  Switching the System On and Off..........................................110
  Using Hill Start Assist........................................................110
Hints on Controlling the Interior
  Climate.................................................................................80
  Cooling the Interior Quickly................................................82
  General Hints........................................................................80
  Heating the Interior Quickly................................................81
  Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions...............................83
  Recommended Settings for Cooling.......................................82
  Recommended Settings for Heating.......................................81
  Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather..................................83
  Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures....................................................82
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....................................112

I

Ignition Switch.........................................................................93

Information Displays............................................................62
  General Information..........................................................62
  Information Messages........................................................66
Installing Child Seats.............................................................15
  Attaching a Child Seat with Top Tethers..................................17
  Booster Seats........................................................................16
  Child Seats for Different Mass Groups...................................15
  ISOFIX Anchor Points..........................................................17
  Top Tether Anchor Points.....................................................17
Instrument Cluster....................................................................57
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....................................................48
Interior Lamps.........................................................................50
  Courtesy Lamp.......................................................................50
  Reading Lamps.........................................................................51
Interior Mirror.........................................................................54
  Auto-Dimming Mirror..........................................................54

J

Jump-Starting the Vehicle.........................................................132
  To Connect the Booster Cables.............................................132
  To Start the Engine.............................................................133

K

Keyless Entry..........................................................................36
  Disabled Keys.........................................................................38
  General Information............................................................36
  Locking and Unlocking the Doors With the Key Blade................38
  Locking Your Vehicle...........................................................37
  Passive Key............................................................................37
  Unlocking Your Vehicle........................................................37
Keyless Starting.........................................................................93
  Failure to Start.........................................................................94
  Ignition On...............................................................................94
  Starting a Diesel Engine.........................................................94
  Starting With Automatic Transmission.....................................94
  Starting With Manual Transmission.......................................94
  Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving...................95
  Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary...............95
Keys and Remote Controls......................................................27
Knee Airbag...........................................................................26
## Index

### L

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lighting Control</th>
<th>47</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Headlamp Flasher</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighting Control Positions</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main Beams</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking Lamps</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighting</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Carrying</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locking and Unlocking</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Locking with the Key</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Control</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlocking the Doors with the Interior Door Handles</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locks</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luggage Covers</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### M

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance</th>
<th>142</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical Specifications</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Climate Control</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Liftgate</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening and Closing the Liftgate</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Seats - 3-Door</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Lumbar Support</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folding the Seatback Forward</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving the Seat Backward and Forward</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recline Adjustment</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returning the Seatback to the Seating Position</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Seats - 5-Door</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Lumbar Support</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving the Seat Backward and Forward</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recline Adjustment</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Transmission</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting Reverse Gear</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message Centre</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirrors</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Heated Windows and Mirrors</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Windows and Mirrors</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile Communications Equipment</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MyKey Troubleshooting</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil Check</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening and Closing the Bonnet</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closing the Bonnet</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening the Bonnet</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking Aid</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front and Rear Sensing System</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Sensing System</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking Aids</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking Brake</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Vehicles</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles With Automatic Transmission</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles With Manual Transmission</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger Airbag</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching the Passenger Airbag Off</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching the Passenger Airbag On</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive Anti-Theft System</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arming the Engine Immobiliser</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coded Keys</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disarming the Engine Immobiliser</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PATS</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Passive Anti-Theft System</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personalised Settings</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measure Units</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching Chimes Off</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Door Locks</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Locking and Unlocking</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power Windows</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessory Delay</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounce-Back</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One-Touch Down</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One-Touch Up</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Window Lock</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Fog Lamps</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Seats</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folding the Seatback</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unfolding the Seatback</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Under Floor Storage</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustable Load Floor</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear View Camera</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching the Rear View Camera Off</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching the Rear View Camera On</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the Display</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles with Parking Aid</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear View Camera</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Rear View Camera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Window Wiper and Washers</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermittent Wipe</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Window Washer</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse Gear Wipe</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refuelling</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Control</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the Remote Control Battery</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Programming a New Remote Control</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Control With a Folding Key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blade</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Control Without a Folding Key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blade</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reprogramming the Unlocking Function</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing a Headlamp</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repairing Minor Paint Damage</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacement Parts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommendation</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collision Repairs</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warranty on Replacement Parts</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roadside Emergencies</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running-In</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakes and Clutch</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyres</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running Out of Fuel</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refilling With a Portable Fuel Container</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety Precautions</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat Belt Height Adjustment</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat Belt Minder</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turning the Seat Belt Minder Off</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat Belts</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seats</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side Airbags</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side Curtain Airbags</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sitting in the Correct Position</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow Chains</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Using Snow Chains</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Cruise Control</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability Control</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starter Switch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See: Ignition Switch</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting a Diesel Engine</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold or Hot Engine</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure to Start</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting and Stopping the Engine</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting a Petrol Engine</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold or Hot Engine</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Idle Speed after Starting</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure to Start</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flooded Engine</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start-Stop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Re-Start the Engine</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Stop the Engine</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Start-Stop</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering Wheel Lock</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles With Keyless Starting</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicles Without Keyless Starting</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering Wheel</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Compartments</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

258
Supplementary Restraints System............................................24
Principle of Operation................................................................24
Switching Off the Engine.........................................................98
Vehicles With a Turbocharger..................................................98
Symbols Glossary....................................................................5
SYNC™ Applications and Services...........................................222
In the Event of a Collision.......................................................224
Setting Emergency Assistance On..........................................223
SYNC Emergency Assistance..................................................222
SYNC™................................................................................208
General Information...............................................................208
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.......................................................229

Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications..................................183
Temporary Mobility Kit.........................................................170
General Information...............................................................170
Inflating the Tyre.................................................................171
Using the Kit.....................................................................170
Tow Ball.............................................................................125
Driving With a Trailer..........................................................126
Driving Without a Trailer......................................................127
Inserting the Tow Ball Arm...................................................126
Maintenance.....................................................................128
Removing the Tow Ball Arm................................................127
Unlocking the Tow Ball Arm
Mechanism........................................................................126
Towing a Trailer.................................................................125
Steep Gradients.....................................................................125
Towing Points.........................................................................128
Front Towing Eye.................................................................128
Rear Towing Hook.................................................................128
Towing the Vehicle on Four
Wheels.................................................................128
All Vehicles.....................................................................128
Vehicles With Automatic Transmission.............................129
Towing...............................................................................125
Transmission..................................................................107
Trip Computer.................................................................65
.................................................................65
Distance Odometer..............................................................66
Tyre Care.................................................................173
Tyre Inflation When Punctured
See: Temporary Mobility Kit..............................................170

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System....................................174
System Reset..................................................................175
Tyre Repair Kit
See: Temporary Mobility Kit..............................................170
Tyres
See: Wheels and Tyres.........................................................170

Under Bonnet Overview - 1.0L
EcoBoost.........................................................................144
Under Bonnet Overview - 1.25L
Duratec-16V (Sigma).........................................................145
Under Bonnet Overview - 1.4L
Duratec-16V (Sigma)............................................................146
Under Bonnet Overview - 1.5L
Duratorq-TDCi (67kW/91PS)..............................................148
Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L
Duratec-16V (Sigma)............................................................147
Under Bonnet Overview - 1.6L
Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel..............................................149
Unique Driving Characteristics..............................................99
Using Cruise Control...........................................................120
Switching Cruise Control Off..............................................121
Switching Cruise Control On..............................................120
Using Snow Chains.............................................................174
Vehicles with Stability Control..............................................174
Using Stability Control.........................................................114
.....................................................................................114
Using SYNC™ With Your Media
Player...............................................................................225
Accessing Your USB Song Library......................................228
Bluetooth Devices and System
Settings.........................................................................229
Connecting Your Media Player to the USB
Port...................................................................................225
Media Menu Features..........................................................227
Media Voice Commands.......................................................226
What is Playing?.................................................................226

259
Index

Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.............212
Accessing Features Through the Mobile Phone Menu.....................................................216
Accessing Your Mobile Phone Settings...............................................................................218
Bluetooth Devices..............................................................................................................220
Making a Call......................................................................................................................215
Mobile Phone Options During an Active Call......................................................................215
Mobile Phone Voice Commands............................................................................................213
Pairing a Mobile Phone For the First Time.............................................................................212
Pairing Subsequent Mobile Phones.......................................................................................212
Receiving a Call......................................................................................................................215
Text Messaging.....................................................................................................................217
Using Voice Recognition.........................................................................................................209
Helpful Hints..........................................................................................................................209
Initiating a Voice Session........................................................................................................210
System Interaction and Feedback...........................................................................................210
Using Winter Tyres...............................................................................................................173

V

Vehicle Care.........................................................................................................................168
Vehicle Identification Number.................................................................................................184
Vehicle Identification Plate......................................................................................................183
Ventilation
  See: Climate Control............................................................................................................77
Vents
  See: Air Vents.....................................................................................................................77
VIN
  See: Vehicle Identification Number.....................................................................................184
Voice Control............................................................................................................................43

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators..............................................................................................58
Anti-lock Braking System Warning Lamp..................................................................................58
Brake System Warning Lamp....................................................................................................58
Cruise Control Indicator..........................................................................................................58
Direction Indicator...................................................................................................................58
Door Ajar Warning Lamp..........................................................................................................58
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp..............................................................................58
Engine Oil Warning Lamp.........................................................................................................59
Engine Warning Lamps..............................................................................................................59
Front Airbag Warning Lamp.....................................................................................................59
Front Fog Lamps Indicator.........................................................................................................59
Frost Warning Lamp................................................................................................................59
Glow Plug Indicator..................................................................................................................60
Headlamp Indicator..................................................................................................................60
Ignition Warning Lamp.............................................................................................................60
Information Indicator...............................................................................................................60
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.................................................................................................60
Main Beam Indicator...............................................................................................................60
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator.........................................................................................................60
Seat Belt Minder Warning Lamp...............................................................................................60
Shift Indicator..........................................................................................................................60
Stability Control Indicator........................................................................................................60
Start-Stop Indicator..................................................................................................................60
Warning Triangle.......................................................................................................................132
Washer Fluid Check..................................................................................................................152
Washers
  See: Wipers and Washers....................................................................................................44
Washing
  See: Cleaning the Exterior....................................................................................................168
Wheels and Tyres......................................................................................................................170
  General Information.............................................................................................................170
  Technical Specifications..........................................................................................................179
Windows and Mirrors..............................................................................................................52
Windscreen Washers...............................................................................................................45
Windscreen Wipers...................................................................................................................44
Intermittent Wipe.....................................................................................................................44
Speed Dependent Wipers.........................................................................................................44
Winter Tyres
  See: Using Winter Tyres.......................................................................................................173
Wipers and Washers..................................................................................................................44